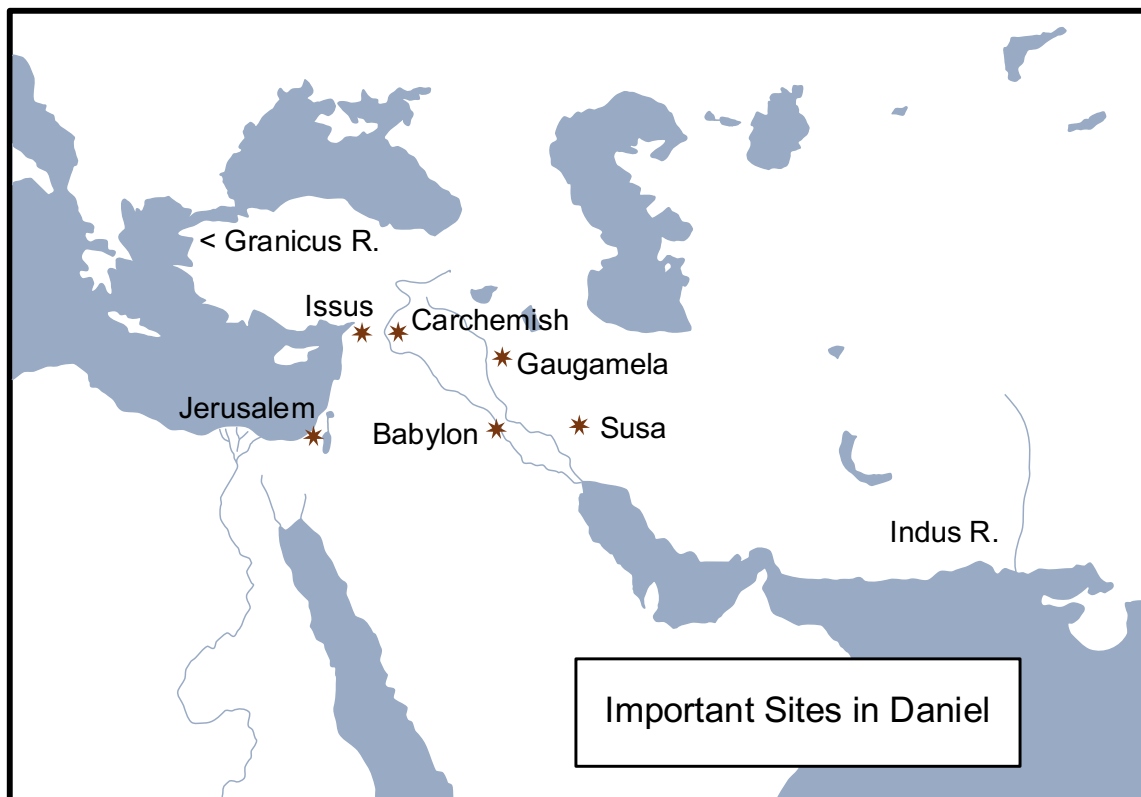


# Notes on Daniel

2025 Edition  
Dr. Thomas L. Constable

## Introduction

### BACKGROUND



In 605 B.C. Prince Nebuchadnezzar led the Babylonian army of his father Nabopolassar against the allied forces of Assyria and Egypt. He defeated them at Carchemish, which was then under Assyrian control. This victory gave Babylon supremacy in the ancient Near East. With Babylon's victory, Egypt's vassals, including Judah, passed under Babylonian control. Shortly thereafter that same year Nabopolassar died, and Nebuchadnezzar succeeded him as king. Nebuchadnezzar then moved south and invaded Judah, also in 605 B.C. He took some royal and noble captives to Babylon (Dan. 1:1-3), including Daniel, plus some of the vessels from Solomon's

*Copyright © 2025 by Thomas L. Constable*

temple (2 Chron. 36:7). This was the first of Judah's three deportations in which the Babylonians took groups of Judahites to Babylon. The king of Judah at that time was Jehoiakim (2 Kings 24:1-4).

Jehoiakim's son Jehoiachin (also known as Jeconiah and Coniah) succeeded him in 598 B.C. Jehoiachin reigned only three months and 10 days (2 Chron. 36:9). Nebuchadnezzar invaded Judah again. At the turn of the year, in 597 B.C., he took Jehoiachin to Babylon, along with most of Judah's remaining leaders, including young Ezekiel, and the rest of Judah's national treasures (2 Kings 24:10-17; 2 Chron. 36:10).

A third and final deportation took place approximately 11 years later, in 586 B.C. Jehoiakim's younger brother Mattaniah, whose name Nebuchadnezzar had changed to Zedekiah, was then Judah's puppet king. He rebelled against Babylon's sovereignty by secretly making a treaty with Pharaoh Hophra under pressure from Jewish nationalists (Jer. 37—38). After an 18-month siege, Jerusalem fell. Nebuchadnezzar returned to Jerusalem, burned the temple, broke down the city walls, and took all but the poorest of the Jews captive to Babylon. He also took Zedekiah prisoner to Babylon, after he executed his sons, and put out the king's eyes, at Riblah in Aram (modern Syria; 2 Kings 24:18—25:24).<sup>1</sup>

### SCOPE

Daniel, who is the main character from whom this book gets its name, was probably only a teenager when he arrived in Babylon in 605 B.C. The Hebrew words used to describe him, the internal evidence of chapter 1, and the length of his ministry, seem to make this clear. He continued in office as a public servant at least until 538 B.C. (1:21), and as a prophet at least until 536 B.C. (10:1). Thus the record of his ministry spans 70 years, which was the entire duration of the Babylonian Captivity. He probably lived to be at least 85 years old and perhaps older.

---

<sup>1</sup>See Arnold G. Fruchtenbaum, *The Book of Daniel*, pp. 9-25, for a more extensive description of the historical background of Daniel's times.

## WRITER

"The issue of the date and authorship of Daniel is without doubt the most controversial subject of study today pertaining to the book of Daniel."<sup>1</sup>

"According to the consensus of modern critical scholarship, the stories about Daniel and his friends are legendary in character, and the hero himself most probably never existed."<sup>2</sup>

There is little doubt among conservative scholars, however, that a historical person named Daniel wrote this book under the Holy Spirit's guidance. What makes Daniel's authorship quite clear is both internal and external evidence.

Internally, the book claims in several places that Daniel was its writer (8:1; 9:2, 20; 10:2). References to Daniel in the third person do not indicate that someone else wrote about him, because it was customary for ancient authors of historical memoirs to write about themselves this way (cf. Exod. 20:2, 7).<sup>3</sup>

"As in several other books of prophecy (e.g., Jeremiah and Hosea), the author is also the chief actor in the events recorded."<sup>4</sup>

Externally, Ezekiel mentioned Daniel (Ezek. 14:14; 28:3). Also, the Lord Jesus Christ spoke of this book as the writing of Daniel (Matt. 24:15; Mark 13:14). From its earliest appearance the Jews believed that Daniel was its writer. The early church father Jerome argued for Daniel's authorship against a contemporary critic of his, Porphyry, who contended that someone composed it about 165 B.C. and claimed that he was Daniel.<sup>5</sup>

Probably Daniel finished writing this book late in his life, which could have been about 530 B.C. or a few years later. Several Persian-derived governmental terms appear in the book. The presence of these words

---

<sup>1</sup>J. Paul Tanner, *Daniel*, p. 37. See his discussion of this subject on pp. 37-80.

<sup>2</sup>John J. Collins, *Daniel*, p. 1. See, for example, Gerhard von Rad, *Old Testament Theology*, 2:309.

<sup>3</sup>Gleason L. Archer Jr., "Daniel," in *Daniel-Minor Prophets*, vol. 7 of *The Expositor's Bible Commentary*, p. 4.

<sup>4</sup>Robert D. Culver, "Daniel," in *The Wycliffe Bible Commentary*, p. 769.

<sup>5</sup>For a discussion of the critical views of authorship, see Tremper Longman III and Raymond B. Dillard, *An Introduction to the Old Testament*, pp. 373-76.

suggests that the book received its final polishing after Persian had become the official language of government. This would have been late in Daniel's life.

"If Daniel was a youth (*yeled*, i. 4, 10) of from fifteen to eighteen years of age at the time of his being carried captive into Chaldea, and died in the faith of the divine promise soon after the last revelation made to him in the third year (ch. x. 1) of king Cyrus, then he must have reached the advanced age of at least ninety years."<sup>1</sup>

### CANONICITY

The Jews placed Daniel in the Writings section of their Bible. The first two divisions of the Hebrew Bible are the Law and the Prophets. The Writings in Hebrew are called the Kethubim, and in Greek, the Hagiographa.<sup>2</sup> The Jews placed this book in the Writings section because Daniel was not a prophet in the sense in which the other Hebrew prophets were. He functioned as a prophet, and he wrote inspired Scripture, but he was a government official, an administrator in a Gentile land, rather than a preaching prophet. Nehemiah was also not a typical prophet but a government official.

"... though Christ spoke of Daniel's *function* as prophetic (Matt. 24:15), his *position* was that of governmental official and inspired writer, rather than ministering prophet (cf. Acts 2:29-30)."<sup>3</sup>

In contrast to Ezekiel, his contemporary in Babylon, Daniel lived and worked among Gentiles primarily, whereas Ezekiel lived and ministered among the Israelites. Only Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi follow Daniel chronologically among the prophetic books of the Old Testament, but Ezra, Nehemiah, Esther, and Chronicles also follow Daniel among the historical books.

The Greek and Latin translators of the Book of Daniel placed it among the other Major Prophets in the Septuagint and Vulgate versions, because of

---

<sup>1</sup>C. F. Keil, *Biblical Commentary on the Book of Daniel*, p. 3.

<sup>2</sup>See Thomas J. Finley, "The Book of Daniel in the Canon of Scripture," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 165:658 (April-June 2008):195-208.

<sup>3</sup>*Zondervan Pictorial Bible Dictionary*, s.v. "Daniel, Book of," by R. K. Harrison, 2:12-21.

its prophetic content.<sup>1</sup> That tradition influenced the scholars who produced our English versions.

## DATE

The dating of this book is one of the most controversial subjects in the field of Old Testament Introduction.<sup>2</sup> The controversy is not due to the obscurity of evidence but to the presuppositions of critics.

It is quite easy to determine when Daniel lived and ministered because of the many historical references in this book. As noted above, his fellow prophet Ezekiel also referred to him (cf. Ezek. 14:14, 20; 28:3). However, because the book contains prophecies that Antiochus Epiphanies fulfilled in the second century B.C., many rationalistic critics, who deny that the Bible contains predictive prophecy, have maintained that Daniel could not have written it. They contend that it must have been written after Antiochus, namely, about 165 B.C.<sup>3</sup> Modern criticism follows Porphyry's ancient view that Daniel did not write this book. But there are many evidences within the book itself that point to its origin in the sixth century B.C.<sup>4</sup>

"Human inventiveness in things spiritual or unspiritual is very limited. It would be difficult probably to invent a new heresy. Objectors of old were as acute or more acute than those now; so that the ground was well-nigh exhausted."<sup>5</sup>

No significant writer championed a late date for the book, after Jerome refuted Porphyry, until the eighteenth century A.D. J. D. Michaelis revived Porphyry's theory in 1771, and it took root in the rationalistic intellectual soil of the Enlightenment. Since then many scholars who do not believe in predictive prophecy have insisted that this book must have been the product of the Maccabean revolt (168-165 B.C.). Liberal critics still consider the late dating of Daniel to be one of the most assured results of

---

<sup>1</sup>The Greek Septuagint translation was probably completed about 250 B.C., and the Latin Vulgate dates from about A.D. 390. The field of Old Testament Introduction deals with matters of authorship, date, canonicity, and other preliminary subjects.

<sup>2</sup>See Longman and Dillard, pp. 373-76.

<sup>3</sup>E.g., Robert H. Pfeiffer, *History of New Testament Times*, p. 63.

<sup>4</sup>See Bruce K. Waltke, "The Date of the Book of Daniel," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 133:532 (October-December 1976):319-29.

<sup>5</sup>Edward B. Pusey, *Daniel the Prophet*, p. iii.

modern scholarship. Nevertheless, there is ample evidence in the book itself that Daniel wrote it and that it dates from the sixth century B.C.<sup>1</sup>

"One who claims that the book of Daniel is a product of the Maccabean age thereby denies that it is a work of true predictive prophecy as it purports to be. Furthermore, if the book of Daniel comes from the age of the Maccabees, I do not see how it is possible to escape the conclusion that the book is also a forgery, for it claims to be a revelation from God to the Daniel who lived in Babylon during the exile."<sup>2</sup>

## LANGUAGES

Daniel is one of the few books in the Old Testament that was originally written in two different languages. One was Aramaic (also known as Chaldee or Syriac), which was the common language of the ancient Near East, and the other was Hebrew. The other Aramaic passages are Ezra 4:8 through 6:18; 7:12 through 26; and Jeremiah 10:11. The compound name Jegar-Sahadutha in Genesis 31:47 is also Aramaic.

The Aramaic portions in Daniel deal with matters pertaining to all the citizens of the Babylonian and Persian empires, whereas the Hebrew sections describe predominantly Jewish concerns and God's plans for Israel. Probably Daniel wrote the Aramaic sections for the benefit of his Gentile neighbors, and he wrote the whole book for the Jews, who could read both languages.

---

<sup>1</sup>For more information, see R. K. Harrison, *Introduction to the Old Testament*, pp. 1110-26; Gleason L. Archer Jr., *Survey of Old Testament Introduction*, pp. 380-403; idem, "Old Testament History and Recent Archeology From the Exile to Malachi," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 127:508 (October-December 1970):291-98, or any of the better commentaries on Daniel, such as John F. Walvoord, *Daniel: The Key to Prophetic Revelation*, pp. 16-25; Keil, pp. 19-57; Joyce G. Baldwin, *Daniel: An Introduction and Commentary*, pp. 35-46; or H. C. Leupold, *Exposition of Daniel*, pp. 8-14, 18-27. J. Dwight Pentecost, "Daniel," in *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: Old Testament*, pp. 1324-25, wrote a good brief discussion of the major objections, as did J. Sidlow Baxter, *Explore the Book*, 4:49-55, 59-65, 69-72.

<sup>2</sup>Edward J. Young, *The Prophecy of Daniel: A Commentary*, p. 5. See also pp. 19-20 and 23-26 for evidence that Daniel wrote the book himself.

## PURPOSE

To the interested observer of Israel's fortunes in Daniel's time, it seemed that Yahweh had either become impotent or had abandoned His chosen people: the Israelites. The gods of Assyria and Babylon had apparently triumphed over Him. His temple lay in ruins, His capital had been ravaged and stood empty and vulnerable, and His people were living as unhappy captives in a foreign land.

At such a time as this, God revealed His supernatural power. He did so in order to demonstrate that He is the one true God, and that He is still sovereign over the affairs of humanity and history. He manifested His power to the supreme rulers of Babylon and Persia, so that they might know that He governs over everyone from heaven—that He alone is God.

"Daniel is preeminently the book of the sovereignty of God over the kingdoms of men."<sup>1</sup>

This was a time in Israel's history similar to the time just before the Exodus. Israel was in captivity, and Israel's God was in disgrace. Daniel contains proof of God's sovereignty, which the plagues and the crossing of the Red Sea demonstrated to Pharaoh and the Egyptians. Daniel, like Exodus, relates several "contests" between false gods and Yahweh in which Israel's God proves to be the only true and living God. Like Daniel, Esther also shows God working for His people during a period of their divine discipline.

"The predominant message is that God's people will experience suffering and be threatened with extinction, but that will not be the end of the story because their God is the living and all-powerful God who will get glory by vindicating His name and who will save them."<sup>2</sup>

"Daniel's purpose in writing blended the two themes of prophecy and piety. He wrote first to show God's *future* program for the nation of Israel (in light of her fall) during and after 'the times of the Gentiles.' Second, he wrote to show what the believers' *present* response should be as they await

---

<sup>1</sup>Kenneth G. Hanna, *From Moses to Malachi*, p. 405. See the Appendix: "Aspects of the Person and Work of God that the Old Testament Prophetic Books Stress" at the end of these notes.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, p. 66.

the coming kingdom of God. Daniel encouraged his readers to remain faithful to God in a hostile society while they waited for God's promised kingdom."<sup>1</sup>

The purpose of the book is: "To demonstrate that God is sovereignly in control of the nations under whom Israel is being disciplined until the time comes when He will bring in Messiah's kingdom, and that Israel will ultimately be restored and blessed in this kingdom after she has first undergone tribulation and sufferings imposed by the antichrist."<sup>2</sup>

## THEOLOGY

First, the book stresses the sovereignty of God.

"The absolute sovereignty and transcendence of God above all angels and men literally permeates the book."<sup>3</sup>

"The theme running through the whole book is that the fortunes of kings and the affairs of men are subject to God's decrees, and that he is able to accomplish his will despite the most determined opposition of the mightiest potentates on earth."<sup>4</sup>

"The collapse and fall of both Israel and Judah notwithstanding, the book of Daniel makes crystal clear that the Lord God remains absolutely sovereign over human affairs. This is apparent in the present, despite political and religious conditions that might suggest otherwise, and in the future, when there would be no doubt in anyone's mind."<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Charles H. Dyer, in *The Old Testament Explorer*, p. 701. See Fruchtenbaum, pp. 541-63, for a lengthy appendix on the times of the Gentiles.

<sup>2</sup>Tanner, p. 35.

<sup>3</sup>John C. Whitcomb, *Daniel*, p. 17.

<sup>4</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 8.

<sup>5</sup>Eugene H. Merrill, "A Theology of Ezekiel and Daniel," in *A Biblical Theology of the Old Testament*, p. 388.



Merrill highlighted three aspects of Yahweh's sovereignty that Daniel reveals: His sovereignty over all, the sovereignty over (fallen) man, and the restoration of God's universal dominion.<sup>1</sup>

The powerful miracles recorded in chapters 1 through 6 show God's sovereignty at work for His people. The prophecies in chapters 7 through 12 show His sovereignty over the Gentile nations and Israel by unveiling what He will do with them far into the future.

Daniel's name means "God Is My Judge" or "God Is Judging" or "God Will Judge," and this was the burden of his message: God's judgment. Especially the period that Jesus Christ referred to as "the times of the Gentiles" (Luke 21:24) is the focus of this revelation.

"The times of the Gentiles is that extended period of time in which the land given in covenant by God to Abraham and his descendants is occupied by Gentile powers and the Davidic throne is empty of any rightful heir in the Davidic line. The times of the Gentiles, beginning with Nebuchadnezzar's invasion of Jerusalem in 605 B.C., will continue till the Messiah returns. Then Christ will subdue nations, deliver the land of Israel from its Gentile occupants, and bring the nation Israel into her covenanted blessings in the millennial kingdom."<sup>2</sup>

Second, Daniel's prophecies also reveal the fulfillment of God's great redemptive plan that began at the Fall and will culminate in the return and reign of the Son of Man on the earth. One writer stated the theme of the book as: "Only God is truly sovereign and He will establish His eternal kingdom."<sup>3</sup>

A third theological emphasis is the power of prayer. God's working in response to His people's prayers is evident everywhere in this book, particularly in the first six chapters and in chapters 9 and 10.

A fourth theological theme is the indomitable grace of God. Even though the Jews had failed Him miserably, God revealed that He had not cast off His people Israel. He was disciplining them presently, but He has a future

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., pp. 388-95.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, p. 1329.

<sup>3</sup>Les P. Bruce, "Discourse Theme and the Narratives of Daniel," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 160:638 (April-June 2003):175.

for them as a nation (cf. Rom. 11:25-27, 29). Furthermore, He will fulfill His promises to the patriarchs regarding Gentile blessing too.

"The primary theme of the book of Daniel is the revelation of Israel's future in relation to the Gentile kingdoms (now that the nation has gone into exile in Babylon), and God's exaltation of Daniel as a channel through whom He reveals his will."<sup>1</sup>

## **GENRE**

Daniel is a book of narrative history. Historical narrative is its primary genre (literary type). The first six chapters all contain narratives (stories) of the life of Daniel and his three Hebrew friends. The last six chapters are narrative in form even though they contain several prophecies that God gave Daniel. Since so much of the book contains prophecy, this is also one of its primary genres.

There is some debate about whether the historical chapters are prophetic, as well as the chapters that record the revelations that God gave Daniel about the future. I believe the first six chapters are prophetic, since these events give foreshadows of events to come that the later prophetic chapters articulate more specifically.

The Israelites viewed history, as well as prophetic visions and oracles (divine pronouncements), as revelatory. We can see this in the fact that they called the books of Israel's history in the Promised Land the "Former Prophets" (i.e., Joshua, Judges, Samuel, and Kings) in the Hebrew Bible. They regarded God's dealings with them in history to be just as revelatory, of Himself and His ways, as His messages to them through the prophets. Therefore, I think that God intended us to see previews of what Daniel prophesied in what he experienced, since the major lessons correspond.

"Among the great prophetic books of Scripture, none provides a more comprehensive and chronological prophetic view of the broad movement of history than the book of Daniel. Of the three prophetic programs revealed in Scripture, outlining the course of the nations, Israel, and the church, Daniel alone reveals the details of God's plan for both the nations and Israel.

---

<sup>1</sup>Tanner, p. 113.

Although other prophets like Jeremiah had much to say to the nations and Israel, Daniel brings together and interrelates these great themes of prophecy as does no other portion of Scripture. For this reason, the book of Daniel is essential to the structure of prophecy and is the key to the entire Old Testament prophetic revelation. A study of this book is, therefore, not only important from the standpoint of determining the revelation of one of the great books of the Old Testament but is an indispensable preliminary investigation to any complete eschatological [end times] system."<sup>1</sup>

"In NT prophecy Daniel is referred to more than any other OT book. Moreover, it contains more fulfilled prophecies than any other book in the Bible."<sup>2</sup>

"In many respects, the book of Daniel is the most comprehensive prophetic revelation of the Old Testament, giving the only total view of world history from Babylon to the second advent of Christ and interrelating Gentile history and prophecy with that which concerns Israel. Daniel provides the key to the overall interpretation of prophecy, is a major element in premillennialism, and is essential to the interpretation of the book of Revelation. Its revelation of the sovereignty and power of God has brought assurance to Jew and Gentile alike that God will fulfill His sovereign purposes in time and eternity."<sup>3</sup>

Daniel is also one of three Old Testament books that is apocalyptic. Apocalyptic literature (or simply "apocalyptic") is a particular genre. It predicts or describes the end of the world in catastrophic language. The apocalyptic sections are chapters 2, 7, 8, and 10 through 12. The other two books are Ezekiel (37:1-14; 40:1—48:35) and Zechariah (1:7—6:8). Some writers considered only Daniel and Revelation complete apocalypses.<sup>4</sup> In the New Testament, Revelation is the only apocalyptic book. Extrabiblical

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 7.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 3.

<sup>3</sup>Walvoord, p. 27. Premillennialism is that interpretation of Scripture that sees Jesus Christ's second coming to the earth as the beginning of His 1,000-year reign on the earth.

<sup>4</sup>E.g., Culver, p. 772; Young, p. 22.

pseudepigraphal apocalyptic books include 1 Enoch, 2 Esdras, and 2 Baruch.<sup>1</sup>

"Apocalyptic literature is symbolic visionary prophetic literature, composed during oppressive conditions, consisting of visions whose events are recorded exactly as they were seen by the author and explained through a divine interpreter, and whose theological content is primarily eschatological [end times]."<sup>2</sup>

"Whereas in the prophetic literature the eschatological kingdom [*sic*] of God arises out of history through a son of David, in apocalyptic literature it comes in an apocalyptic, transcendent breaking in from heaven. Whereas the prophets looked for a son of David to rule Israel in the eschatological kingdom, the apocalyptic thinkers looked for a Son of Man who rides the clouds to bring in the eschatological kingdom. Jesus identified himself as both the son of David and as the Son of Man, especially the latter."<sup>3</sup>

"The book of Daniel is unquestionably the key to all biblical prophecy. It is the great apocalyptic book of the Old Testament, whereas Revelation is that of the New Testament. Passages such as Matthew 24—25, Mark 13, Luke 21, and the book of Revelation are unintelligible without a knowledge of the book of Daniel."<sup>4</sup>

"No one who has reverently studied the book of Daniel in the context of the completed Scriptures can deny the crucial contribution of this book to God's complete prophetic revelation. Our Lord spoke often of 'the kingdom of heaven' (Matt. 5:3; Dan. 2:44) and of Himself as 'the son of man' (Matt. 26:64; Dan. 7:13-14). Looking toward His second coming to the earth, He referred to 'a great tribulation, such

---

<sup>1</sup>Pseudepigraphal writings are literally "false writings." They are books that claim to be the writing of some person, usually a famous person, but are not.

<sup>2</sup>Ralph H. Alexander, "Hermeneutics of Old Testament Apocalyptic Literature" (Th.D. dissertation, Dallas Theological Seminary, 1968), p. 1.

<sup>3</sup>Bruce K. Waltke, *An Old Testament Theology*, pp. 158-59. See also the discussions of apocalyptic in idem, p. 550, and in Longman and Dillard, pp. 386-89.

<sup>4</sup>Charles L. Feinberg, *Daniel: The Kingdom of the Lord*, p. 13.

as has not occurred since the beginning of the world until now' (Matt. 24:21; cf. Dan. 12:1), and to 'the abomination of desolation' that will stand in the Temple (Matt. 24:15; Dan. 9:27; 12:11). The apostle Paul also referred to this work of 'the man of lawlessness' (2 Thess. 2:3-4; cf. Dan. 7:25; 11:36-39) but rejoiced that someday 'the saints will judge the world' (1 Cor. 6:2; Dan. 7:18, 22, 27)."<sup>1</sup>

## OUTLINE

This outline reflects the linguistic divisions of the book, chapters 1 and 8 through 12 having been written in Hebrew, and chapters 2 through 7 in Aramaic.

- I. The character of Daniel ch. 1
  - A. Historical background 1:1-2
  - B. Nebuchadnezzar's training program for promising youths 1:3-7
  - C. Daniel's resolve to please Yahweh 1:8-13
  - D. The success of the test 1:14-16
  - E. God's blessing of Daniel and his friends 1:17-21
- II. The times of the Gentiles: God's program for the world chs. 2—7
  - A. Nebuchadnezzar's first dream: the big picture ch. 2
    - 1. The king's dream 2:1-3
    - 2. The failure of the king's wise men 2:4-13
    - 3. Daniel's request for time 2:14-16
    - 4. Daniel's reception of a revelation 2:17-23
    - 5. Daniel's prayer of thanksgiving 2:20-23
    - 6. Daniel's appearance before Nebuchadnezzar 2:24-30
    - 7. What Nebuchadnezzar saw in his dream 2:31-35
    - 8. The interpretation of Nebuchadnezzar's dream 2:36-45
    - 9. The consequences of Daniel's interpretation 2:46-49
  - B. Nebuchadnezzar's golden image ch. 3

---

<sup>1</sup>Whitcomb, p. 16.

1. The worship of Nebuchadnezzar's statue 3:1-7
  2. The charge against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego 3:8-12
  3. The response of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego 3:13-18
  4. The execution of the king's command 3:19-23
  5. God's deliverance of His servants 3:24-27
  6. The consequences of God's deliverance 3:28-30
- C. Nebuchadnezzar's pride and humbling ch. 4
1. Nebuchadnezzar's introductory doxology 4:1-3
  2. The king's frustration over his second dream 4:4-9
  3. Nebuchadnezzar's account of his dream 4:10-18
  4. Daniel's interpretation 4:19-27
  5. The fulfillment of threatened discipline 4:28-33
  6. Nebuchadnezzar's restoration 4:34-37
- D. Belshazzar's feast ch. 5
1. Belshazzar's dishonoring of Yahweh 5:1-4
  2. God's revelation to Belshazzar 5:5-9
  3. The queen's counsel 5:10-12
  4. Belshazzar's request of Daniel 5:13-16
  5. Daniel's rebuke of Belshazzar 5:17-24
  6. Daniel's interpretation of the writing 5:25-28
  7. Daniel's rise and Belshazzar's fall 5:29-31
- E. Darius' pride and Daniel's preservation ch. 6
1. Daniel's promotion in the Persian government 6:1-3
  2. The conspiracy against Daniel 6:4-9
  3. Daniel's faithfulness and Darius' predicament 6:10-15
  4. Daniel in the lions' den 6:16-18
  5. Daniel's deliverance and his enemies' destruction 6:19-24
  6. Darius' decree and praise of Yahweh 6:25-28
- F. Daniel's vision of future world history ch. 7
1. The four beasts 7:1-8

2. The Ancient of Days and the destruction of the fourth beast 7:9-12
  3. The Son of Man's kingdom 7:13-14
  4. The interpretation of the four beasts 7:15-18
  5. Daniel's request for interpretation of the fourth beast 7:19-22
  6. The interpretation of the fourth beast 7:23-25
  7. The end of the fourth beast and the beginning of the everlasting kingdom 7:26-28
- III. Israel in relation to the Gentiles: God's program for Israel chs. 8—12
- A. Daniel's vision of the ram and the goat ch. 8
1. The setting of the vision 8:1-2
  2. The ram 8:3-4
  3. The goat 8:5-8
  4. The little horn on the goat 8:9-14
  5. The interpretation of this vision 8:15-26
  6. The result of this vision 8:27
- B. Daniel's vision of the 70 sevens ch. 9
1. Jeremiah's prophecy of Jerusalem's restoration and Daniel's response 9:1-3
  2. Daniel's prayer of confession 9:4-14
  3. Daniel's petition for restoration 9:15-19
  4. God's response to Daniel's prayer 9:20-23
  5. The revelation of Israel's future in 70 sevens 9:24-27
- C. Daniel's most detailed vision of the future chs. 10—12
1. Daniel's preparation to receive the vision 10:1—11:1
  2. The near future 11:2-35
  3. The distant future 11:36—12:4
  4. The end of Israel's trials 12:5-13

Many students of the book simply divide Daniel into two parts:

- I. The history of Daniel chs. 1—6

## II. The prophecies of Daniel chs. 7—12<sup>1</sup>

### MESSAGE

The Book of Daniel contains many unique and significant emphases. I am going to point out some of these first, before organizing them into an explanation of what God has revealed to us in this book.

Theologically, Daniel stresses the sovereignty of God. Specifically, it shows that God is wise enough and powerful enough to create and control history. In the ancient Near East, people typically credited great wisdom to some of their gods and great power to others, but not normally to the same gods.

Philosophically, Daniel reveals the course and the culmination of good and evil throughout human history.

Hermeneutically, we observe that God teaches His people what will happen in the future by helping them appreciate what has happened in the past. In other words, we learn to understand the future by studying the past.<sup>2</sup> The future builds on the past and is an extension of the past. The literal fulfillment of some of Daniel's prophecies encourages us to interpret the unfulfilled prophecies literally.

Pedagogically, we note that God teaches us by going from the simple to the complex, from the known to the unknown.<sup>3</sup> This applies as we look back on history, and it applies as we look forward in prophecy. For example, God gave Daniel simple visions first, and then more complex ones later that built on the earlier ones. The first vision in Daniel is the most simple to interpret, and the last one is the most difficult.

Temporally, the book proceeds from what happened in the past to what will happen in the future. As noted above, some students of the book divide it into two parts: history (chs. 1—6), and prophecy (chs. 7—12). This illustrates generally how the content of this book moves from past events to future events.

---

<sup>1</sup>See Tanner, pp. 22-35, for a good discussion of the literary structure of Daniel.

<sup>2</sup>Hermeneutics is the science and art of interpretation.

<sup>3</sup>Pedagogy is the study of the method and practice of teaching.



Anthropologically, Daniel deals with two groups of people that occupy planet earth in time: Israel and the Gentiles.

Chronologically, the revelation in Daniel advances from the present, to the near future, to the far future—from Daniel's perspective. Even liberal students of the book admit this. From Daniel's perspective in history, some of what God revealed to him involved what was past, and some was future. From our perspective, we can see that what God revealed was not just past and future for him—but past, near future, and far future.

With this background we turn to the major revelations in the Book of Daniel. The contrasts are observational; they help us to see clearly what is here. The major revelations are interpretational; they help us to understand clearly what is here. I will now suggest what is significant about what we observe. There are essentially two major revelations.

The first major revelation is that Yahweh is sovereign in history. By history, I mean what is past. In Daniel, God has proved that He is the ultimate ruler of the world by the way things turned out in the past. Half of the book deals with history; the other half, generally speaking, deals with prophecy.

God has revealed much evidence in this book that proves that He is sovereign over history: that He has made it turn out exactly the way He wanted it to turn out. We find this evidence particularly in the record of the three rulers in chapters 1 through 6.

We have the most evidence in the record of King Nebuchadnezzar.

In chapter 1 we read, "The Lord (Adonai, Master, Sovereign) handed Jehoiakim king of Judah over to him [Nebuchadnezzar]" (1:2).<sup>1</sup> All the events of chapter 1, beginning with Daniel's insignificance in Judah and his quick rise to great significance in Babylon, demonstrate God's sovereignty in the past.

In chapter 2 we have the vision of Nebuchadnezzar's image that gets crushed by a stone that is hurled at it from heaven. This revelation teaches that all the kingdoms of the earth are subject to the kingdom of heaven. Daniel's own testimony to God's sovereignty, in 2:20 through 22,

---

<sup>1</sup>Quotations from the English Bible in these notes are from the *New American Standard Bible* (NASB), 2020 edition, unless otherwise indicated.

expresses the main point of the king's dream, which the most powerful king in the ancient world received from God.

In chapter 3 we see how God takes care of people who acknowledge His sovereignty, namely, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego.

In chapter 4 we see how God takes care of people who do not acknowledge His sovereignty, namely, Nebuchadnezzar. Learning who is the ultimate authority, and responding appropriately to Him, is extremely important for all human beings.

Belshazzar was the second king through whom God revealed His sovereignty (ch. 5). Belshazzar could not read the handwriting on the wall, but Daniel could. The God of heaven had evaluated the king on earth, had found him deficient, and had decided to replace him. What a demonstration of Yahweh's sovereignty we have in this chapter!

The third king was Darius (ch. 6). When Darius visited the lion's den early in the morning, he voiced a question that all people have asked. The Jews of Daniel's day, whom their Gentile enemies had wrenched from the land that Yahweh had promised them and given them, were asking this question. Darius said, "Has your God, whom you continually serve, been able to rescue you from the lions?" (6:20). The lion was a symbol of Babylon (7:4), though here Darius was referring to literal lions. Daniel's reply testified to Yahweh's sovereignty: "My God ... shut the lions' mouths, and they have not harmed me" (6:22).

This is the historical evidence of Yahweh's sovereignty that provided a base of confidence for the prophet, and for the reader, to believe that He is sovereign over the future as well.

How were Daniel and his three friends able to perceive the fact that God is sovereign, when most people did not? There are three keys to their spiritual perception that this book identifies for our learning: First, they separated themselves unto God and His will. Daniel did this in chapter 1, and we read that his three friends did it in chapter 3. Second, in response to their choice to separate to His will, God gave them the ability to understand His will (1:20; 3:17-18). Third, the outcome of their decision, and God's provision, was the glorification of God publicly (3:28-29; 4:34-35; 6:25-27).

Notice also how God communicated the fact of His sovereignty to Daniel, and through him to others. Notice His methods:

First, Daniel's contemporaries saw God's wisdom, manifested through His own servants, in their ability to interpret dreams and visions that no one else could interpret (1:20; 2:10; 5:11-12). The Jews who returned to the land to reestablish life there, after the Babylonian Captivity, needed this wisdom, and God's provision of it to Daniel and his friends would have encouraged them. We see God's wisdom manifested primarily in His Word, rather than in dreams.

Second, Daniel's contemporaries saw God's power, manifested through His own servants, in His care of them (1:15, 21; 2:48-49; 3:24-26, 30; 5:29; 6:28). The many instances in which God protected His own, who had committed themselves to following Him faithfully, would have encouraged Daniel's contemporaries particularly. They encourage us as well. God has protected us for eternity, but not necessarily for a long life before we die.

A second major revelation of the Book of Daniel is God's sovereignty in the future. He has shown us that He is sovereign over the past in history, and now He asks us to believe that He is sovereign over the future in prophecy. The major subjects of prophecy in this book are three:

The first general subject of prophecy in Daniel is humanity in general. God has told us how He would direct the affairs of Gentile world powers in the future. He told us this by comparing nations to the parts of the statue of a man, and to various beasts. What He showed Daniel about Gentile world powers under the man's statue (ch. 2) revealed their external manifestations primarily: their relative power and glory. What He showed Daniel about them under the figures of wild animals (chs. 7 and 8) revealed their internal character primarily: their haughtiness, brutality, aggressiveness, and vileness. Note that these were all wild animals and birds of prey, symbolizing their hostility.

The second general subject of prophecy in Daniel is the Israelites. This is a particular element within humanity, namely, the Jews. God has also told us how He would direct the affairs of His chosen people in the future. Essentially He will do this in two stages, both of which were future from Daniel's perspective in history, but only one of which is future from our perspective. The first stage, or near future, involved Israel's affairs culminating in a great persecution under a Greek ruler, who turned out to be Antiochus Epiphanes (9:23-26; 11:2-35). This persecution happened in the second century B.C. The second stage, or far future, involved Israel's

affairs culminating in a greater persecution under a Roman-like ruler: the Antichrist (9:27; 11:36-45). This would happen in the far future.

Daniel struggled to understand this revelation, because these two antagonists of Israel were both future from his perspective. God did not specify that they would be separate individuals. We can understand this revelation more easily than Daniel could, because one antagonist has appeared, and the other has not yet appeared. Similarly, the Old Testament prophets struggled to understand God's revelation about the two advents of Christ (Isa. 61:1-2). From our perspective, we now understand that He had always predicted two advents of Messiah, and that we live between them.

The third general subject of prophecy in Daniel is God Himself. It is God's sovereign control over time and space that He stressed in the Book of Daniel. However, two sub-revelations help us to appreciate Yahweh's sovereignty, namely, His wisdom and His power.

Absolute sovereignty demands perfect wisdom and limitless power. We can see God's perfect wisdom in His insight into the course of history and in His ability to impart that wisdom (insight) to His prophet. We can see God's limitless power in His setting up and taking down Gentile kingdoms, and in His delegating great worldly power to His prophet. In contrast, national sovereigns (presidents, kings, etc.) have neither perfect wisdom nor limitless power.

We come now to the "so what" of the book. We have observed several important characteristics of this book and have pointed out the significant major revelations. We have done observation and interpretation of the book as a whole, so now we will do application. What effect did God intend that this book should have on the readers: the original Jewish readers of Daniel's day, and us in our day? I suggest three important applications:

First, we must apply the revelation that God is sovereign by acknowledging it and by submitting to Him. We need to believe that God is sovereign—that is, we need to have an unshakable conviction that God is in control—in order to believe that He is the ultimate ruler over all the affairs of humankind. The Book of Daniel can strengthen this belief in us. However, we must not just believe this fact as true. We must also yield ourselves to God, as Daniel and His three friends did. Since He is sovereign, then we

must submit to His will. His slightest wish must be, for us, a command. We must live according to His revealed will.

Second, as we submit to God's sovereignty, we can understand what is going on in history. In this book God has revealed that He is guiding the course of evil to its end, which is destruction. He has also revealed that He is guiding the course of good to its end, which is victory and glory.

Some people are saying that the days in which we live are the most wonderful that the world has ever seen. The world is getting better and better, and utopia is just around the corner. With just a few more modifications, we can realize a world order that will surpass anything in the past. This is the message of evolutionary philosophy, both biological and social.

Other people say that the world is getting worse and worse. Crime and violence are running rampant. We are just the push of a button away from extinction as a race. There are enough weapons of mass destruction in the hands of enough different groups of people today so that we could annihilate one another. Which viewpoint is true? Are things getting better or worse?

Daniel reveals that both viewpoints are true. If both are true, we seem to be headed for a crisis: a final conflict between the forces of good and evil. Daniel reveals that such a crisis is coming. It also tells us what the outcome of that conflict will be. God will intervene in history to terminate evil and to establish good. The "stone" from heaven, God's earthly messianic kingdom, will crush the human statue, which represents Gentile world dominion (2:45).

Third, how should we then live? We should live as Daniel and his three friends lived. We should separate ourselves unto God and His will. We should receive inspiration to persevere from the insight that He has given us in this revelation. And we should worship the sovereign God of the universe who, in His infinite wisdom and power, will eventually raise His own to everlasting life and reward them with participation in His coming kingdom (12:2-3, 13). Someone has defined worship as a positive personal response

to divine revelation. Study of the Book of Daniel should lead us to worship God.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Adapted from G. Campbell Morgan, *Living Messages of the Books of the Bible*, 1:2:145-62.

## Exposition

### I. THE CHARACTER OF DANIEL CH. 1

Chapter 1 provides an introduction to the whole Book of Daniel. It relates early events in the lives of Daniel and his three Hebrew contemporaries, but the emphasis is on Daniel's decisions. These choices formed the basis for his character, and his character and abilities accounted for the unusually long and successful career that he enjoyed in the service of several monarchs. His godly character also provides a key concerning God's choice of him to receive and transmit the remarkable revelations of the future that this book contains. God's choice of Daniel was sovereign, but Daniel's choices qualified him to serve as God intended (cf. 1 Tim. 1:12).

"The first chapter ... is introductory. It sets forth the moral condition suited to enlightenment in the ways and counsels of God. ... If we are going to get the mind of God in studying this book, we must remember that it consists of revelations, deliverances and visions given to a spiritually-minded man who was separated from the iniquity of his day; and if we are to understand it, we also need to be spiritually-minded, and to walk apart from all that is unholy, all that would hinder progress in divine things."<sup>1</sup>

Structurally, the chapter is a chiasm, with the first 14 verses presenting a tension, and the last seven providing the resolution.<sup>2</sup>

- A     Babylonia assumes supremacy over Israel vv. 1-2
- B     Young men taken and subjected to pagan training vv. 3-7
- C     Daniel seeks to remain faithful to his God v. 8-14
- C'    Daniel remains faithful to his God vv. 15-16

---

<sup>1</sup>H. A. Ironside, *Lectures on Daniel the Prophet*, pp. 10, 11. Paragraph division omitted.

<sup>2</sup>See John E. Goldingay, *Daniel*, pp. 8-12. A chiasm is a literary device in which the writer presents material in a crossing pattern, as seen in this diagram, usually to emphasize the central element or elements, as well as to give the material a sense of unity.

B' Young men triumph in their pagan training vv. 17-20

A' Daniel proves supreme over the Babylonians v. 21

**A. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND 1:1-2**

1:1 The book opens with a synopsis of the first Jewish deportation to Babylon in 605 B.C. (cf. 2 Kings 24:1-2; 2 Chron 36:6).<sup>1</sup> Daniel and his three friends were part of the nobles and royal families taken from Jerusalem as captives then. We know nothing more about Daniel's family background. Apparently he lived apart from his family in Babylon (cf. vv. 11-13). Perhaps the Babylonians killed his parents, but this is only speculation.

The date of this deportation by Nebuchadnezzar (605 B.C.), as Daniel recorded it, was the third year of King Jehoiakim's reign (v. 1; cf. 2 Kings 24:1; 2 Chron. 36:6). However, Jeremiah wrote that the first year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign (605 B.C.) was the fourth year of Jehoiakim's reign (Jer. 25:1; cf. 46:2). Many critics of Daniel have seized upon this apparent contradiction and have tried to discredit this prophecy.<sup>2</sup>

Scholars have proposed several solutions to this problem.<sup>3</sup> The best one, from my viewpoint, is that Daniel wrote from the Babylonian perspective and Jeremiah from the Jewish.<sup>4</sup> It would have been only natural for Daniel to do so, since he spent virtually all of his life in Babylon. The Babylonians considered the first year of their kings' reigns as the accession year, the year they became king. That "year" sometimes lasted only a few months. The first regnal year, the first full year of their reign, began with the first day of the new civil year. For the Babylonians this was the first of Nisan. Nisan spanned late

---

<sup>1</sup>D. J. Wiseman, *The Chronicles of the Chaldean Kings*, pp. 25, 46-47, and 66-69, validated this date.

<sup>2</sup>E.g., J. A. Montgomery, *A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on the Book of Daniel*, pp. 113-16.

<sup>3</sup>See Longman and Dillard, pp. 376-77.

<sup>4</sup>Tanner, p. 128.



March and early April. This is the accession-year system of dating.<sup>1</sup>

Jeremiah was writing from the Jewish perspective. During the reigns of Jehoash to Hoshea, the Jews also followed the accession-year system. However, the Jews began their civil years on the first of Tishri, which month spanned late September and early October. This explanation harmonizes these references.<sup>2</sup> Other conservative scholars have offered other ways of resolving this problem that they, too, regarded as only an apparent contradiction.<sup>3</sup>

"... he [Jeremiah] without doubt represents it [605 B.C.] as the beginning of the seventy years of Babylonish exile ..."4

1:2 Daniel wrote that the Lord (Heb. *adonay*, the sovereign God) was responsible for Nebuchadnezzar's dominance of Jehoiakim (cf. 2 Kings 24:1; 2 Chron. 36:6). He viewed God as sovereignly controlling the past affairs of His chosen people (cf. Eph. 1:4). As the book unfolds, this appreciation for God's sovereignty continues as Daniel described God's future dealings with the Jews and the Gentiles.

Daniel used the name "Shinar" to describe Babylon. Shinar is a biblical name for Babylon that often connotes a place hostile to God and faith in God (cf. Gen. 10:10; 11:2; 14:1; Isa. 11:11 [NIV margin]; Zech. 5:11 [NIV margin]).<sup>5</sup> Carrying off the vessels from a conquered people's temple was a way that ancient Near Eastern kings expressed their victorious sovereignty over that nation, particularly its gods (cf. 5:3-4). So Daniel began this book by reminding his readers that it was not only Israel's king who suffered defeat at Nebuchadnezzar's

---

<sup>1</sup>See Jack Finegan, *Handbook of Biblical Chronology*, p. 202.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," pp. 31-32. Cf. Walvoord, pp. 30-31; Leon J. Wood, *The Prophets of Israel*, p. 344.

<sup>3</sup>E.g., Leupold, pp. 47-56; E. R. Thiele, *The Mysterious Numbers of the Hebrew Kings*, p. 166; Culver, p. 772; Pentecost, pp. 1328-29.

<sup>4</sup>Keil, p. 59.

<sup>5</sup>NIV refers to *The Holy Bible: New International Version*.

hands, but also Israel's God, who experienced humiliation. He then proceeded to vindicate Yahweh with all that follows.

**B. NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S TRAINING PROGRAM FOR PROMISING YOUTHS 1:3-7**

1:3-5 Nebuchadnezzar's enlightened policy was to employ the best minds in his kingdom in government service, regardless of their national or ethnic origin.

"Among the Persians the education of boys by the *paidagogai basileioi* [royal teachers] began, according to Plato (*Alcib.* i. 37), in their fourteenth year, and according to Xenophon (*Cyrop.* i. 2), the *epheboi* [adolescents] were in their seventeenth year capable of entering into the service of the kings."<sup>1</sup>

Leon Wood calculated that Daniel and his three friends must have been in their middle teens, since Daniel lived at least until 536 B.C.<sup>2</sup>

"Freedom from blemish and personal beauty were looked upon as a characteristic of moral and intellectual nobility ..."<sup>3</sup>

We do not know how many other Jews and Gentiles were the classmates of Daniel and his three friends. Perhaps these four were the only ones who expressed a desire to observe the Jewish dietary laws (Exod. 34:15; Lev. 11; Deut. 14; cf. Deut. 8:3; Prov. 20:1).

"In selecting these youths for education in the king's court in Babylon, Nebuchadnezzar was accomplishing several objectives. Those carried away captive could well serve as hostages to help keep the royal family of the kingdom of Judah in line. Their presence in the king's court also would

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., p. 73. Plato and Xenophon were, of course, ancient Greek writers.

<sup>2</sup>Leon J. Wood, *A Survey of Israel's History*, p. 383, n. 23.

<sup>3</sup>Keil, pp. 73-74.

be a pleasant reminder to the Babylonian king of his conquest and success in battle. Further, their careful training and preparation to be his servants might serve Nebuchadnezzar well in later administration of Jewish affairs."<sup>1</sup>

"In Hebrew usage the wisdom terms of this verse [v. 4] had ethical religious overtones, for without wholehearted commitment to the Lord and obedience to His will there could be no wisdom (Jb. 28:28)."<sup>2</sup>

There has been some question whether Daniel and his three friends were castrated and made eunuchs, as some royal officials were. This possibility seems unlikely since there is no direct evidence of this in the text. Josephus implied that they may have become eunuchs:

"He [Nebuchadnezzar] also made some of them [the most noble of the Jewish children] to be eunuchs; which course he took also with those of other nations whom he had taken in the flower of their age, and afforded them their diet from his own table, and had them instructed in the institutes of the country, and taught the learning of the Chaldeans ..."<sup>3</sup>

The Hebrew word *saris* ("official," v. 3) can mean both "court official" (cf. Gen. 37:36, where it describes Potiphar, who was married) and "eunuch" (Isa. 56:3; cf. 2 Kings 20:18). These youths were without defects (v. 4). If Nebuchadnezzar wanted youths without defects, it seems unreasonable that he would then turn around and give them a major defect (cf. Lev. 21:17).<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 34.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, p. 79.

<sup>3</sup>Flavius Josephus, *Antiquities of the Jews*, 10:10:1. So also Culver, p. 773.

<sup>4</sup>See *The New Bible Dictionary*, s.v. "Eunuch," by R. J. A. Sheriffs, pp. 398-99.

Josephus also wrote that Daniel and his three peers "were four of the family of Zedekiah."<sup>1</sup> This may be accurate or only Jewish tradition, but clearly they were either members of the royal family or children of Judean nobles (v. 3; cf. Isa. 39:6-7).

The three-year program of study that Daniel and his three companions underwent involved study of the literature and language of the Chaldeans (v. 4). The term "Chaldean" has a double meaning in the Book of Daniel. In some places, including here, it refers to ethnic southern Babylonians, or to Babylonians in general (cf. 3:8; 5:30; 9:1). In other places it describes a class of astrologers and priests that emerged from the ethnic Chaldeans (2:2, 4-5, 10; 4:7; 5:7, 11).<sup>2</sup>

"The Babylonian sages combined many of the functions fulfilled by wise men, prophets, and priests in Israel, though they are to be distinguished from those cultic functionaries who were more especially concerned with the temple and its ritual. They were the guardians of the sacred traditional lore developed and preserved in Mesopotamia over centuries, covering natural history, astronomy, mathematics, medicine, myth, and chronicle. Much of this learning had a practical purpose, being designed to be applied to life by means of astrology, oneirology [the study of dreams], hepatoscopy [the study of the liver] and the study of other organs, rites of purification, sacrifice, incantation, exorcism and other forms of divination and magic."<sup>3</sup>

Evidently what these young men studied was the history and literature of this ancient part of the world (cf. Acts 7:22). This included the old Akkadian and the ancient Sumerian cultures from which the Babylonian had developed.

---

<sup>1</sup>Josephus, 10:10:1.

<sup>2</sup>Cf. Keil, p. 74.

<sup>3</sup>Goldingay, p. 16.

"Though Aramaic had begun to replace Akkadian by 600 B.C., Babylonian scholars continued to study and even write literature in their classical tongue."<sup>1</sup>

Learning the language of a people is one of the best ways to absorb the worldview of that people. Thus Nebuchadnezzar was seeking to cause these youths to assimilate a different culture and to make them thoroughly Babylonian.

"In order to witness to their God in the Babylonian court they had to understand the cultural presuppositions of those around them, just as the Christian today must work hard at the religions and cultures amongst which he lives, if different thought-worlds are ever to meet."<sup>2</sup>

This is a dangerous task, however, because it can lead a person into sin (cf. Deut. 12:30; 1 Cor. 10:12; Col. 2:8).<sup>3</sup>

"... Daniel had no physical blemish and was pleasing in appearance. Mentally, he was intelligent, knowledgeable, and quick to learn. Socially, he was poised and able to live in the king's court without creating embarrassment for himself or others."<sup>4</sup>

Notice the similarity between Daniel's experience and character, and Joseph's and Moses', throughout this chapter.<sup>5</sup>

1:6 Daniel's name probably means "My Judge Is God." "Hananiah" means "Yahweh Has Shown Grace," "Mishael" means "Who Is What God Is?" and "Azariah" means "Yahweh Has Helped." The fact that each of the Jewish youths' names included some

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Nelson Study Bible*, p. 1418.

<sup>2</sup> Baldwin, pp. 80-81.

<sup>3</sup> See Whitcomb, p. 32.

<sup>4</sup> Donald K. Campbell, *Daniel: Decoder of Dreams*, p. 9.

<sup>5</sup> See Joshua M. Philpot, "Was Joseph a Type of Daniel? Typological Correspondence in Genesis 37—50 and Daniel 1—6," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 61:4 (December 2018):681-96.

reference to Yahweh may indicate that they had godly parents. Perhaps their early upbringing by godly parents is one reason they stood for God in Babylon.

- 1:7 The new names assigned these youths all included or referred to various Babylonian gods: Bel, Aku, and Nego (a possible variant spelling of Nebo). "Belteshazzar" may mean "Bel's Prince" or possibly "Lady Protect the King," referring to the goddess Sarpanitu, the wife of Marduk. "Shadrach" may mean "Command of Aku" or "I Am of Little Account." "Meshach" may mean "Who Is What Aku Is?" And "Abednego" most likely means "Servant of Nebo."

"It seems the world always tries to blot out the distinctive marks of a believer ..."<sup>1</sup>

The practice of changing names was a way to express sovereign control over others. These new names would have also encouraged these youths to think of themselves as part of the culture in which they were living, rather than as part of the culture from which they had come (cf. Gen. 41:45).

"Like Zerubbabel and Mordecai, the four can use their foreign names without worrying about them, perhaps on the same basis that Paul can eat meat sacrificed to idols—because the idol is really nothing."<sup>2</sup>

### C. DANIEL'S RESOLVE TO PLEASE YAHWEH 1:8-13

- 1:8 Evidently Daniel took the initiative with his decision not to defile himself, and his three friends followed his lead (cf. vv. 12-16). His decision was not to remain morally pure but to remain ceremonially pure. Ceremonial purity was something that concerned only the most faithful Jews. Jews who were careful to remain ceremonially pure would have been equally careful to preserve their moral and ethical purity. Daniel

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, p. 19.

<sup>2</sup>Goldingay, p. 24.

wanted to please God in every respect, not just in the most important moral aspects of his life (cf. 1 Cor. 10:1-4, 6, 14).

Probably the food and wine that Daniel refused had been offered to the Babylonian gods (Marduk [or Bel], Nebo, Ishtar, and perhaps others), since it came from the king's table (cf. Exod. 34:15; 2 Kings 25:29; 1 Cor. 10:19-20, 28-29).<sup>1</sup> It may also have been food that the Mosaic Law forbade (Lev. 11; Deut. 14:3-21). These young men faced a situation common to every modern Christian youth: They could have been a part of the crowd and submitted to peer pressure in order to get ahead. Or they could have done what they knew would please their God even though it might have involved persecution and cost them advancement opportunities.

"The command of the king, that the young men should be fed with the food and wine from the king's table, was to Daniel and his friends a test of their fidelity to the Lord and to His law, like that to which Joseph was subjected in Egypt, corresponding to the circumstances in which he was placed, of his fidelity to God (Gen. xxxix. 7 f.)."<sup>2</sup>

"It has well been said that faith is not believing in spite of evidence—that's superstition—but obeying in spite of consequences."<sup>3</sup>

"... the only way we can advance in the truth is by maintaining a good conscience [cf. 1 Tim. 1:19; 1 Pet. 3:16; et al.]. Allow one thing in your life unjudged that you know to be contrary to the word of God, or that you fear is not in line with God's will for you, and you will soon find your spiritual eyes become darkened, your spiritual susceptibilities deadened, and no real progress made in your soul, but rather a steady decline. But

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 80.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid.

<sup>3</sup>Warren W. Wiersbe, "Daniel," in *The Bible Exposition Commentary/Prophets*, p. 254.

where there is faithfulness in separation from that which is opposed to the mind of God; where His word is allowed to sit in judgment on all your ways, you will learn that 'the path of the just is as a shining light, which shineth brighter and brighter unto the perfect day.' The Word will illumine each step before you as you take the one already pointed out."<sup>1</sup>

1:9-10 Daniel must have established a good relationship with the Babylonian officials in direct authority over him, especially the "commander." But it was Yahweh who moved the overseer's heart (cf. 1 Kings 8:50; Ps. 106:46), which is another indication of God's sovereignty. The commander, however, feared for his life if Daniel's proposal resulted in the poor appearance of Daniel and his friends.

1:11-13 Notice that Daniel did not rebel against the restrictions that the commander placed upon him. Instead he courteously requested permission to abstain, and then, having received an encouraging response, he offered a positive alternative course of action.

Daniel proposed a vegetarian diet. Modern science has shown that omitting meat and wine from one's diet does not normally result in obviously better health. Perhaps Daniel was relying on God to cause him and his friends to look better at the end of the test period—miraculously. Another possibility is that the youths may have been served such rich food that they could reasonably expect to look and feel better if they abstained. The Hebrew word translated "vegetables" (v. 12, *zero'im*) means "things sowed (from seed)," so fruits, grains, and bread were probably eaten.<sup>2</sup>

#### **D. THE SUCCESS OF THE TEST 1:14-16**

1:14-15 Daniel received a favorable response (Heb. *hesed*, loyal love, and *rahamim*, compassion) when he proposed a ten-day

---

<sup>1</sup>Ironside, p. 21.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, p. 70; Young, p. 46; Montgomery, p. 132..



dietary test. God gave the young men better ("fatter," i.e., healthier, v. 15) appearances, either by natural or by supernatural means.

- 1:16 The result of the test encouraged their overseer to continue feeding them a diet of things grown in the ground. God blessed these three young men because they followed His will, not because they ate vegetables instead of meat. We should not use this passage to argue for the intrinsic superiority of vegetarian diets. The Bible does not command believers to observe a vegetarian diet (cf. Gen. 9:3; 1 Tim. 4:3-5).

"Even a small act of self-discipline, taken out of loyalty to principle, sets God's servants in the line of His approval and blessing. In this way actions attest faith, and character is strengthened to face more difficult situations in the future."<sup>1</sup>

#### **E. GOD'S BLESSING OF DANIEL AND HIS FRIENDS 1:17-21**

- 1:17 In addition to favor with their overseers, God gave Daniel and his three friends the ability to master the subjects that they studied, and wisdom in these matters (cf. James 1:5). They may have thought that Nebuchadnezzar had designed their curriculum, but really God had. Like Moses and Paul, Daniel had an excellent educational background and an unusually brilliant mind (cf. Acts 7:22; Phil. 3:4). God also gave Daniel the supernatural ability to understand visions and dreams (v. 17).

Visions [revelations when awake] and dreams [revelations when asleep] were the primary means God used to communicate His revelations to prophets in the Old Testament (Num. 12:6). From the writer's perspective, Daniel qualified for the blessing of receiving this special gift by choosing to remain loyal to God's will. Daniel's similarity to Joseph is again obvious.

"It is absolutely plain ... that God gave these four 'children' knowledge and skill in all learning and wisdom because of their separation in heart and life from the defiling evils around. ... The students

---

<sup>1</sup>Baldwin, p. 84; Tanner, p. 147.

of modern days, even Christian students, are too often betrayed into the thought, that for the acquisition of human 'learning and wisdom' they are dependent upon their own industry and power."<sup>1</sup>

- 1:18-20 At the end of their three-year curriculum, the four faithful friends received a final examination that included an oral testing by the king himself (cf. Prov. 22:29). They passed at the head of their class (cf. 1 Sam. 2:30). They were probably close to 20 years old at this time.<sup>2</sup> Nebuchadnezzar proceeded to give them positions of significant government responsibility, which their education had equipped them for. In these positions they proved far superior to any of the other officials. "Ten times better" (v. 20) seems to be a hyperbolic idiom meaning many times better (cf. Gen. 31:7, 41; Num. 14:22; Neh. 4:12; Job 19:3).<sup>3</sup>

The fact that the writer called these other officials "soothsayer" priests (Heb. *hartummim*, astrological diviners) and "conjurers" (Heb. *assapim*, enchanter, NIV) has raised questions about whether the four Hebrew youths practiced occult arts. If they refused to eat non-kosher food because of religious conviction, they presumably would not have participated in divination and magic, which the Mosaic Law also expressly forbade (Deut. 18:10-12). Probably we should understand that they excelled in the matter of offering wise advice to their king.

Daniel also received insight into the future from God ("visions and dreams," v. 17), so he would have had better knowledge of the future than the Chaldean astrologers. Chapters 2, 4, 5, and 7 through 12 validate this claim. There we read of no pagan divination but straightforward prophetic revelation, some in direct answer to prayer.<sup>4</sup> Daniel could write this of

---

<sup>1</sup>Edward Dennett, *Daniel the Prophet*, p. 16.

<sup>2</sup>See Walvoord, p. 41.

<sup>3</sup>Hyperbole is an exaggerated statement or claim not meant to be taken literally.

<sup>4</sup>Divination is the practice of seeking knowledge of the future or the unknown by supernatural means.

himself without boasting, because he credited God with giving him his unusual abilities.

1:21 Daniel excelled quantitatively as well as qualitatively. The kings under which he served recognized and continued to employ his divinely bestowed talents for many years. Cyrus' first year as king of Babylon was 538 B.C. This was the year in which Cyrus (the Great) issued his decree permitting the Jews to return to their land.<sup>1</sup> The first return took place the next year, in 537 B.C. Thus Daniel's ministry as a government official spanned approximately 65 years. Daniel 10:1 says that Daniel continued to receive revelations from God even after his career as a government official ended.

"... 'Daniel continued unto the first year of king Cyrus,' means only that he lived and acted during the whole period of the exile in Babylon, without reference to the fact that his work continued after the termination of the exile."<sup>2</sup>

Two dates bracket this first chapter: the year that Daniel went to Babylon as a captive (605 B.C.), and the year that his government career ended (538 B.C.). The content of this chapter focuses on the key to Daniel's remarkable career: He purposed to remain faithful to God's will, even in a relatively minor matter. God blessed that commitment and gave this already gifted and diligent young man additional talents and opportunities with which to serve Him. This chapter introduces the rest of the book, which contains such amazing revelations that the reader might question their validity without this introduction to the prophet himself.

"Daniel and his three friends became models of how Jews were to remain faithful to God while under gentile dominion."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>See Jack Finegan, *Light from the Ancient Past*, pp. 230-33.

<sup>2</sup>Keil, p. 83.

<sup>3</sup>Dyer, p. 702.

## II. THE TIMES OF THE GENTILES: GOD'S PROGRAM FOR THE WORLD

### CHS. 2—7

Daniel wrote 2:4b through 7:28 in the Aramaic language. This literary change gives the reader a clue that this part is a distinct section of the book. The content of this section also identifies it as special. It concerns the future history of the Gentiles during "the times of the Gentiles" (Luke 21:24). Aramaic was the common language of the world in which Daniel lived when he wrote. It is natural, therefore, that he would have recorded what concerns the world as a whole in the language of the Gentiles.

The writer constructed this section of the book in chiastic form.

- A     A prophecy of an image concerning four Gentile nations and their end  
ch. 2
- B     The supernatural persecution and deliverance of Daniel's friends  
          ch. 3
- C     God's revelation to the Gentile king Nebuchadnezzar ch. 4
- C'    God's revelation to the Gentile king Belshazzar ch. 5
- B'    The supernatural persecution and deliverance of Daniel ch. 6
- A'     A prophecy of animals concerning four Gentile nations and their end  
ch. 7<sup>1</sup>

"Chapters 2 and 7 explain the succession of four gentile empires that would exert control over Jerusalem and the Jews until God's kingdom is established. Chapters 3 and 6 warned the Jews of the persecution they would face during this period and exhorted them to remain faithful to God. Chapters 4 and 5 encouraged the Jewish remnant by reminding them that a time would come when even the gentile rulers would acknowledge that the God of Israel rules over the nations."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>See also A. Lenglet, "La structure littéraire de Daniel 2—7," *Biblica* 53 (1972):169-90.

<sup>2</sup>Dyer, p. 704.

**A. NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S FIRST DREAM: THE BIG PICTURE CH. 2**

This chapter is important because it records the broadest sweep of world history that God gave any prophet. It is the big picture—an overview of history yet future from Daniel's perspective. And it is the longest chapter in Daniel.

"The second chapter of Daniel has been justly called 'the alphabet of prophecy.' Whoever wishes to understand the prophetic Scriptures must come to this chapter for the broad outline of God's future program for the nations, for Israel, and for the glorious kingdom of Messiah. This outline is the simple but comprehensive framework of a multitude of future events. No political document can compare with it, and its importance cannot be overstated."<sup>1</sup>

"Nowhere else in Scripture, except in Daniel 7, is a more comprehensive picture given of world history as it stretched from the time of Daniel, 600 years before Christ, to the consummation at the second advent of Christ. It is most remarkable that Daniel was not only given this broad revelation of the course of what Christ called 'the times of the Gentiles' (Lk 21:24), but also the chronological prophecy of Israel's history stretching from the rebuilding of Jerusalem to the second advent of Christ. These two major foci of the book of Daniel justify the general description of the book as world history in outline with special reference to the nation of Israel."<sup>2</sup>

"Few chapters of the Bible are more determinative in establishing both principle and content of prophecy than this chapter; and its study, accordingly, is crucial to any system of prophetic interpretation."<sup>3</sup>

"The God of Daniel is the central figure and not the courtier."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, p. 29.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, p. 44. Cf. Culver, p. 777.

<sup>3</sup>Walvoord, p. 45.

<sup>4</sup>W. L. Humphreys, "A Life-style for Diaspora," *Journal of Biblical Literature* 92 (1973):221.

"As you turn from chapter 1 to chapter 2, the atmosphere in the king's palace changes radically. Chapter 1 closes with recognition and security, but chapter 2 introduces rejection and danger."<sup>1</sup>

### 1. The king's dream 2:1-3

2:1 Daniel opened this new section of his book with another chronological reference (cf. 1:1, 21). This indicates that his interest in this book was in the progress of events and their relationship to one another. As the book unfolds, chronology plays an important part in what God revealed, though the chronology is not always without interruption.

The events related in this chapter happened in the second year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign. According to several reliable scholars, Nebuchadnezzar officially became king on September 7, 605 B.C. On the first of Nisan, 604 B.C., during the following spring, the first official year of his reign began. The intervening months constituted his accession year and were credited to his father's reign. The first year of his reign then ended on the first of Nisan the following year: 603 B.C. The second year of his reign (v. 1) began in 603 and ended in 602 B.C.<sup>2</sup>

Daniel probably arrived in Babylon during the summer of 605 B.C. and began his three-year education (1:4-5) shortly after that, perhaps in the fall. His curriculum may not have taken three full years; it could have ended in the spring of 602 B.C. Thus Daniel probably had finished his education and entered into government service when the events of chapter 2 unfolded, as the text implies.

The Hebrew text of verse 1 says that Nebuchadnezzar had "dreamed dreams" that disturbed him. Evidently he had a recurring dream or similar dreams that he later described as one dream (v. 3). These dreams robbed him of rest, as Pharaoh's dreams did him (Gen. 41), and Ahasuerus' dream did him (Esth. 6). All of these Gentile rulers suffered insomnia as

---

<sup>1</sup>Wiersbe, p. 257.

<sup>2</sup>Wiseman, pp. 25-26; Thiele, pp. 159-60; Finegan, *Handbook of ...*, p. 38.

part of God's dealings with them and the people who lived under their authority. Another earlier Gentile ruler who received revelations from God was Abimelech (Gen. 20:3). The ancients regarded dreams as having significance and as foreshadowings of events to come.<sup>1</sup>

Why did God give Nebuchadnezzar, rather than some other monarch, this dream? Evidently it was because it was Nebuchadnezzar who terminated the Israelite theocracy—for many years to come—and began "the times of the Gentiles" (Luke 21:24).

"The world-power must itself learn in its first representative, who had put an end to the kingdom of God [the Israelite theocracy], what its own final destiny would be, that, in its turn overthrown, it would be for ever subject to the kingdom of God."<sup>2</sup>

2:2-3 Nebuchadnezzar assembled his wise men (v. 12) to interpret the meaning of what he had dreamed. Daniel identified four distinct groups of them here. The king wanted to make sure someone could help him. Soothsayers (Heb. *chartummim*), who were Babylonian priests, were evidently scholars who could read and write and foresee the future.<sup>3</sup> Conjurers or enchanters (*'ashshaphim*) could evidently communicate with the spirit world.<sup>4</sup> Sorcerers (*mekhashshephim*) practiced sorcery (black magic), divination, and astrology (the study of celestial bodies).<sup>5</sup>

The name "Chaldeans" (*kasdim*) refers here to the priestly caste that studied the heavens in order to determine the future (i.e., astrologers), though this name also refers generally to the people who lived in Mesopotamia, particularly southern Mesopotamia (cf. 1:4; Gen. 11:28).<sup>6</sup> The Chaldean

---

<sup>1</sup>Young, p. 56.

<sup>2</sup>Auberlen, quoted by Keil, p. 85.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, p. 75.

<sup>4</sup>Ibid., p. 76.

<sup>5</sup>Ibid., p. 83. See also Merrill F. Unger, *Demons in the world Today*, pp. 75-96.

<sup>6</sup>Leupold, p. 84.

astronomers were remarkably accurate.<sup>1</sup> Archaeologists have discovered books containing astronomical calculations in the ruins of ancient Mesopotamia. Daniel prepared the reader for the failure of all the king's counselors, which follows, by pointing out that there were many different groups of them.

## **2. The failure of the king's wise men 2:4-13**

2:4 The Chaldeans took the lead in replying to the king. They responded in the Aramaic language that was widely used in business and government throughout the empire.

“Aramaic was the lingua franca of the Near East from the eighth century, although Akkadian long remained in use in the contexts of ritual and learning.”<sup>2</sup>

"Aramaic was called Chaldean until the latter half of the nineteenth century."<sup>3</sup>

“Since the rise of Assyriology in the nineteenth century, it has been recognized that the ‘language of the Chaldeans’ is not Aramaic but Akkadian.”<sup>4</sup>

This reference to Aramaic introduces the section of the book that Daniel wrote in Aramaic (2:4b—7:28)—apparently because it concerns matters of worldwide concern. Critics of the Book of Daniel have alleged that Aramaic was not in use when Daniel is supposed to have lived, in the sixth century B.C., but that there is evidence of its use in the second century B.C., when many of them believe the book was written.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>See Whitcomb, pp. 36-37.

<sup>2</sup>Collins, p. 156. "Lingua franca" refers to a language that is adopted as a common language between speakers whose native languages are different.

<sup>3</sup>Young, p. 59.

<sup>4</sup>Collins, p. 138.

<sup>5</sup>E.g., *ibid*, p. 38.



The Chaldeans addressed the king with appropriate respect: "O king, live forever!" (cf. 1 Kings 1:31; Neh. 2:3; Dan. 3:9; 5:10; 6:6, 21).

"This represented a wish or hope that the king would live on from one age to another, with no foreseeable termination by death."<sup>1</sup>

Evidently it was customary for the Babylonian kings to tell their dreams to their advisers, who would then provide a politically correct interpretation that would satisfy the monarch. But Nebuchadnezzar wanted his wise men not only to give him an interpretation but also to tell him what he had dreamed.

"The [Chaldean] dream manuals, of which several examples have come to light, consist ... of historical dreams and the events that followed them, arranged systematically for easy reference. Since these books had to try to cover every possible eventuality they became inordinately long; only the expert could find his way through them, and even he had to know the dream to begin with before he could search for the nearest possible parallel. The unreasonable demands of the king and the protests of the interpreters in verses 3-11 are in keeping with his character and the known facts concerning dream books."<sup>2</sup>

2:5-6 It is unclear in the text whether the king had really forgotten his dream or was just withholding it in order to test his counselors. The Authorized (King James) Version implies that he had forgotten it, by translating verses 5 and 8: "The thing is gone from me." However, the NASB's, "The command from me is firm," suggests that Nebuchadnezzar was referring to his command rather than his dream. The NIV and TNIV rendering is similar.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 40.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, p. 87. See also A. L. Oppenheim, "The Interpretation of Dreams in the Ancient Near East," *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society* 46 (1956):179-373.

<sup>3</sup>TNIV refers to *The Holy Bible: Today's New International Version*.

"The king was a young man who had been extraordinarily successful in his military conquests. He undoubtedly had developed a great deal of confidence in himself. It is entirely possible that the wise men were much older than the king, having served Nebuchadnezzar's father. It would be understandable that the king might have previously been somewhat frustrated by these older counselors and may have had a real desire to be rid of them in favor of younger men whom he had chosen himself. Nebuchadnezzar might well have doubted their honesty, sincerity, and capability, and may even have wondered whether they were loyal to him. He may also have questioned some of their superstitious practices."<sup>1</sup>

Regardless of what Nebuchadnezzar may or may not have remembered, his desire to validate the interpretation that his advisers would propose is beyond doubt. They claimed to offer infallible supernatural guidance. If they failed, they would suffer excruciating dismemberment and shame (cf. 2 Kings 10:27; Ezra 6:11). If they succeeded, gifts, a special reward, and great honor would be theirs (cf. Joseph, Mordecai, and Daniel).

"The violence and peremptoriness of the threatened punishment is in accordance with what might be expected at the hands of an Eastern despot; the Assyrians and Persians, especially, were notorious for the barbarity of their punishments."<sup>2</sup>

2:7      The repetition of the wise men's request reinforced it. This is frequently the intent of the biblical writers in repeating something. Repetition assures the reader that something is very important or absolutely certain. This is especially true in

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 50. Cf. Culver, p. 778.

<sup>2</sup>S. R. Driver, *The Book of Daniel*, p. 20.

prophetic revelations such as the ones that follow in this book (cf. Gen. 41:32).

- 2:8-9 The king saw through his seers' delay to an attempt to put distance between the dream and its interpretation. They hoped that, as time passed, he would forget what he had dreamed, if he had not done so already. Perhaps his expectations of them would diminish as well. However, Nebuchadnezzar wanted to guarantee that the interpretation that they offered was correct.
- 2:10-11 The Chaldeans proceeded to explain, with profuse courtesy and flattery, that what the king requested was humanly impossible. No one could tell what the king had dreamed. Furthermore, no king had ever asked his counselors to do such a thing before. Only the immortal gods could provide this information, and the implication was that even these men could not get information from the gods. Yet that is precisely what they claimed to be able to provide: supernatural information. Their confession sets the stage for Daniel's ability to do precisely what they said no person could do.
- 2:12-13 Their confession of inability, and their complaint that the king was being unfair with them, made Nebuchadnezzar very angry with his wise men (cf. Gen. 40:2; 41:10; Dan. 3:13, 19). He gave orders to execute all the wise men in Babylon, specifically, those who were his counselors. Probably the city of Babylon is in view here, rather than the province of Babylon or the whole Babylonian empire (cf. v. 49; 3:1), since the king's counselors were the targets of his wrath. Daniel and his three friends fell under the edict because they were advisers to the king (1:20), not because they practiced divination, which, it is safe to say, they did not. They had not been summoned with the other wise men, probably because they were novices.<sup>1</sup>

### **3. Daniel's request for time 2:14-16**

- 2:14-15 When Daniel learned of his sentence he responded with customary discretion and discernment (cf. 1:8, 12), not with

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 94.

objections (cf. vv. 10-11) or anger (cf. v. 12). Perhaps the king's decision in itself did not surprise Daniel, since he surely realized that many of the wise men were charlatans (deceivers). However, the harshness of the verdict puzzled him. Clearly the court officials, including the king himself, had come to respect Daniel highly, since they listened to him and granted his requests.

2:16 There is no other record of God having given anyone knowledge of a dream that another person had—without the dreamer telling him the contents of the dream. Joseph had interpreted the dreams of Pharaoh and his servants after they told him what they were. But Daniel believed that God could do anything, even reveal the dream itself to him, as well as its interpretation.

"The stage was now set to show the reality, wisdom, and power of the one true God—Yahweh—as over against the inarticulate and impotent imaginary gods the magicians worshiped. It is the same general theme that dominates the remainder of the book and serves to remind the Hebrew nation that despite their own failure, collapse, and banishment into exile, the God of Israel remains as omnipotent as he ever was in the days of Moses and that his covenantal love remains as steadfast toward the seed of Abraham as it ever had been."<sup>1</sup>

#### **4. Daniel's reception of a revelation 2:17-19**

2:17 Daniel informed his three friends of the situation so they could pray together about it (cf. Ps. 50:15; Phil. 4:6-7).

"It is the first instance of united prayer recorded in Scripture; and the fact that these children of

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 42.

the captivity resorted to it, discovers to us the secret of their holy and separate walk."<sup>1</sup>

Since the decree affected them all, they joined in interceding corporately to "the God of heavens" (literally). This title for God appears five times in this chapter (vv. 18, 19, 28, 37, 44) plus elsewhere, particularly in books that have pagan Babylon as their setting. It appears in 5:23; nine times in Ezra; four times in Nehemiah; and in Genesis 24:3 and 7; Psalm 136:26; and Jonah 1:9. The Babylonians worshipped the heavens, but Yahweh is the God over all the heavens, not just the God of heaven. He is sovereign over all.

2:18 The four young men prayed for compassion (mercy) from God, since the king's edict was very harsh (v. 15). They asked that God's compassion would manifest itself by a revelation of the king's dream, and its interpretation (v. 16), so that they would not die with the other wise men, who were worthy of death (cf. Gen. 18:22-33). The "secret" in view was something unknown that they prayed that God would reveal. In Scripture this is the consistent meaning of a "mystery." It is not something spooky or frightening but something previously hidden by God but now revealed by Him.

2:19 The writer narrated these events to help us understand that God revealed the secret mystery as a response to the prayers of the four men (cf. James 4:2). The answer came at night, but in a vision, rather than in a dream. As noted previously, in a vision the person receiving the revelation was awake, whereas in a dream he or she was asleep. Both methods have been common vehicles of divine revelation (Num. 12:6). The writer waited until later to reveal to the reader what God had revealed to Daniel. Here he wanted to focus attention on the response to receiving this revelation.

---

<sup>1</sup>Dennett, p. 22.

### 5. Daniel's prayer of thanksgiving 2:20-23

These verses have been called "Daniel's psalm."<sup>1</sup>

2:20 Daniel wished that people would bless (praise) God's name forever because of two of His traits particularly.

"The *name* stands in Holy Scripture for the nature or revealed character of God, and not a mere label or title. It is found very frequently in the Old Testament as synonymous with God Himself in relation to man. ... In the New Testament the same usage is perfectly clear."<sup>2</sup>

Daniel mentioned God's wisdom and power at the beginning and at the end of his praise (vv. 20, 23), and he illustrated both characteristics in between.<sup>3</sup> This entire book clearly reveals God's wisdom and power.

2:21 Evidence of His power is His control of events; He changes times and seasons (v. 21a). This is perhaps a reference to the Jews' special days.<sup>4</sup> It is more likely a preview of what the rest of the Book of Daniel reveals. Yahweh determines when, in the unfolding of history, events will happen and how long each process or phase of history will last.

"God, who 'controls the course of world events,' loves change. Why? Because it makes us trust Him. You can't get rooted in any particular year because another year is on its way. Leadership changes, our needs change, and the availability of resources changes. But if we are fixed to the unchanging One who controls all change, we can live lives of trust and praise."<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 99.

<sup>2</sup>W. H. Griffith Thomas, "The Purpose of the Fourth Gospel," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 125:499 (July-September 1968):262.

<sup>3</sup>See the diagram in Tanner, p. 179.

<sup>4</sup>J. N. D[arby], *Studies on the Book of Daniel*, p. 82

<sup>5</sup>Charles R. Swindoll, *The Swindoll Study Bible*, p. 1002.

The second evidence of God's power is that He controls the destiny of nations; He sets up kings and deposes them (v. 2b).

"Perhaps the greatest evidence of Yahweh's lordship in Daniel's own experience lay ... in his unswerving conviction that his God was the one who appointed and deposed the monarchs of human kingdoms. Because these kings and their subjects thought they were called to their office and given its privileges and responsibilities by their own gods,<sup>1</sup> Daniel's assertion that the God of Israel was in fact the originator and grantor of human authority was a tacit [suggested] denial of any perceived role for the gods of the nations."<sup>2</sup>

Daniel identified two evidences of God's wisdom. First, He gives wisdom to the wise (v. 21c, d); He is the source of all wisdom.

2:22      Second, He reveals things that would be unknown to humans otherwise. He can do this because He knows what is unknown to people, and the light of knowledge dwells with Him.

2:23      Perhaps Daniel referred to Yahweh as "the God of my fathers" because he was experiencing God's compassion in a way similar to how his spiritual forefathers had experienced it. He gave the credit for the wisdom, and its resultant power that he had received, to its proper Source. Daniel did not originate the revelations that follow but received them from God and communicated them to others (cf. 2 Pet. 1:21). He viewed the vision as an answer to the prayers of himself and his three friends (v. 23).

Daniel was confident that the information that God had given him would save their lives. This confidence is testimony to the clarity and obvious supernatural source of this revelation. Daniel did not need to contrive an answer that he hoped would satisfy the king, as the Babylonian seers did. He simply needed

---

<sup>1</sup>For many examples, see Bertil Albrektson, *History and the Gods*, pp. 42-52.

<sup>2</sup>Merrill, p. 389.

to declare the revelation that the only living and true God had given him.

We should bear this testimony of Daniel in mind when we read the later revelations that God gave him in this book. They are as reliable as this one was, because they too came from the God of wisdom and power.

## **6. Daniel's appearance before Nebuchadnezzar 2:24-30**

2:24 Daniel had to go through Arioch in order to get to the king, since the king had authorized Arioch to execute all the wise men. (Perhaps Arioch introduced Daniel to the king earlier too [v. 14], though that is not stated.) Daniel could have requested his life and the lives of his friends alone. Perhaps Daniel asked for the lives of the other Chaldean counselors, as well as his own, so that they would have time to become believers in Yahweh.

"He was not so occupied with his own importance (even though he had just received knowledge concerning the dream) that he did not think of others."<sup>1</sup>

2:25 Daniel convinced Arioch that he could identify the king's dream and interpret it. The king's commander therefore ushered Daniel into Nebuchadnezzar's presence and presented him as someone that Arioch had discovered—among the exiles of Judah of all people! Obviously the commander hoped to put himself in the king's favor and to enjoy some of the reward that Daniel would receive. Arioch had great confidence in Daniel. If Daniel failed, Arioch would suffer the king's wrath. Actually Daniel had sought Arioch out (v. 24), not the other way around.

2:26 Arioch had focused on Daniel as the solution to the king's problem. Nebuchadnezzar viewed him the same way.

---

<sup>1</sup>Leon J. Wood, *A Commentary on Daniel*, p. 62.



2:27 Daniel, however, quickly redirected the king's attention from himself and placed it where it belonged, on God, who revealed the future. No human being, neither the Babylonian wise men nor himself, could provide what the king required. Daniel used a new name for one of these groups of seers here: "diviners" (*gazerim*), meaning astrologers.<sup>1</sup> They tried to draw information about the future from the heavens, but "the God of heavens" (v. 18) had revealed the secret.

2:28 Specifically it was information about "the latter days" (lit. "the end of the days") that God had given Daniel for the king. This phrase occurs first in Genesis 49:1 and always refers to the future (cf. 10:14; Num. 24:14; Deut. 4:30; Isa. 2:2; Jer. 30:24; 48:47; 49:39; Ezek. 38:16; Hos. 3:5; Mic. 4:1). The context determines how much of the future is in view, but it usually focuses on Messiah's appearance.<sup>2</sup>

This phrase "refers to the future of God's dealings with mankind as to be consummated and concluded historically in the times of the Messiah."<sup>3</sup>

"In the context of Daniel 2, 'the latter days' include all the visions which Nebuchadnezzar received and stretches from 600 B.C. to the second coming of Christ to the earth."<sup>4</sup>

Young, an amillennialist, took this phrase as equivalent with "the last days" to which the New Testament writers referred, which we are now in (cf. Acts 2:16-17; 1 Tim. 4:1; 2 Tim. 3:1; Heb. 1:1; 1 John 2:18).<sup>5</sup> This seems wrong in view of what the dream revealed.

---

<sup>1</sup>See Leupold, p. 105.

<sup>2</sup>See a table that shows the prophetic outcome of each reference in Fruchtenbaum, pp. 83-84.

<sup>3</sup>Robert D. Culver, *Daniel and the Latter Days*, p. 107.

<sup>4</sup>Walvoord, p. 61. See his extensive study of this phrase on pp. 60-61.

<sup>5</sup>Young, p. 70. Amillennialists do not believe that there will be a 1,000-year (millennial) reign on Christ on the earth following His second coming.

2:29 Daniel then related the king's dream and its interpretation. But before he did he proceeded to remind Nebuchadnezzar that, before he had fallen asleep, he had been thinking about the future. The dream that God had given him was a divine revelation of what that future would hold.

"No dream [recorded or referred to in the Bible], before this or since, has ever revealed so much of world history."<sup>1</sup>

2:30 Daniel then assured the king again that it was the true God who was responsible for this revelation, rather than Daniel himself, who was no greater than any other man (cf. v. 28). Thus Daniel gave all the glory to God (cf. Joseph in Gen. 41:16). It was important for Nebuchadnezzar to receive this revelation, since he was to be the first Gentile king in a significant period of history, namely, the times of the Gentiles. As mentioned earlier, "the times of the Gentiles" refers to the period during which Gentile nations would dominate Israel, lasting until Messiah defeats Gentile power with His reign.

### **7. What Nebuchadnezzar saw in his dream 2:31-35**

2:31 Daniel next pictured clearly and concisely what Nebuchadnezzar had seen in his dream. The king had been viewing a large statue that was standing before him. There is no basis in the text for concluding that this was an idol. The statue was extremely splendid and awe-inspiring because of its appearance. Daniel did not say if it was a statue of a man or a woman, though it was presumably a man, or if it represented the king or someone else. The important things about this statue were the materials that composed it and what happened to it.

"The figure of a man was employed here because God wished to make known what would transpire during man's day, the ages in which mortal man ruled the earth. Here, in one panoramic sweep, the whole history of human civilization is spread

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, pp. 34-35.

before us, from the days of Nebuchadnezzar to the end of time."<sup>1</sup>

"The world-power is in all its phases one, therefore all these phases are united in the vision of *one* image."<sup>2</sup>

2:32-33     The head was of fine gold. Its chest and arms were silver. Its abdomen and thighs were bronze. Its lower legs were iron, and its feet were a combination of iron and clay. Archaeologists have discovered similar images made of several types of precious metals in Babylonia.<sup>3</sup>

Several features of this image are noteworthy: First, the head is the only member of the body made of only one metal. All the other parts had more than one substance, with the exception of the arms. Specifically, the upper torso was silver but bronze lower down. The same was true of the legs and feet. Second, there is a consistently decreasing value of the substances beginning at the top and proceeding to the bottom of the image. Third, the image was top-heavy. The specific gravity of gold is about 19, silver about 11, brass about 8.5, and iron 7.8.<sup>4</sup> Fourth, the substances progress from the softest to the hardest, top to bottom. The feet, however, are a non-adhering combination of very hard and hard but fragile materials. The clay in view may have been baked clay that the Babylonians used as tiles in construction projects.

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, p. 35.

<sup>2</sup>Kliefoth, quoted by Keil, p. 102.

<sup>3</sup>See Baldwin, pp. 96-98.

<sup>4</sup>Walvoord, p. 63.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S DREAM STATUE					
<b>Head</b>	Gold	Valuable	Soft	Self-contained unit	Heavy
<b>Chest and arms</b>	Silver	Less valuable	Harder	1 unit & 2 parts	Lighter
<b>Abdomen</b>	Bronze	Even less valuable	Even harder	1 unit & 2 different parts	Even lighter
<b>Lower legs</b>	Iron	Still less valuable	Still harder	2 parts	Still lighter
<b>Feet and toes</b>	Iron & clay	Least valuable	Very hard and very soft	2 parts & 10 segments	Lightest

2:34-35 As Nebuchadnezzar viewed this image, in his dream, he saw an uncut stone come flying out of the air and smashing its feet, which crumbled into little pieces. This was a stone uncut by human hands (but by God's powerful "hand"). While he watched, the whole statue fell apart and disintegrated into powder. A wind whipped up the powder and blew it all away. Then the rock that had struck the image began to grow larger until it filled the whole scene.

"It is not said of the parts of the image, the head, the breast, the belly, and the thighs, that they were broken to pieces by the stone, 'for the forms of the world-power represented by these parts had long ago passed away, when the stone strikes against the last form of the world-power represented by the feet,' but only of the materials of which these parts consist, the silver and the gold, is the destruction predicted; 'for the material, the combinations of peoples, of which these earlier forms of the world-power consist,

pass into the later forms of it, and thus are all destroyed when the stone destroys the last form of the world-power."<sup>1</sup>

## **8. The interpretation of Nebuchadnezzar's dream 2:36-45**

### **Daniel's introduction to the interpretation 2:36**

Daniel carefully distinguished the dream (vv. 31-35) from its interpretation (vv. 36-45) for the sake of clarity. His reference to "we" telling the interpretation is probably an editorial plural. This form of speech allowed Daniel to present himself humbly to the king and at the same time remind him that God had given the dream and its interpretation (vv. 28, 30; cf. 1 Cor. 2:6).

### **The head of gold 2:37-38**

Nebuchadnezzar was the supreme authority in the world of his day. Earlier, Jeremiah had warned the kings of Edom, Moab, Ammon, Tyre, and Sidon that God had given Nebuchadnezzar sovereignty over the entire earth, including the animals (Jer. 27:6-7, 14). While the extent of his empire was not as great as those that followed him, he exercised absolute control as no one after him did. Furthermore, the idea of world empires originated with the Babylonians, going back to the Tower of Babel. So it was appropriate to picture Babylon as the "head" of world empires.

"For a despot like Nebuchadnezzar, his government was the ideal type and was therefore esteemed as highly as gold. He exercised unrestricted authority over life and death throughout all Babylon. His word was law; no prior written law could challenge his will (v. 38)."<sup>2</sup>

In an interesting book by Will and Ariel Durant, these renowned historians concluded that monarchy is probably the best form of government.<sup>3</sup> They meant that an absolute monarchy is best for exercising absolute control.

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 104, with quotation from Kliefoth. See also Collins, p. 165.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 46.

<sup>3</sup>Will and Ariel Durant, *The Lessons of History*, pp. 68-69

Nebuchadnezzar was an absolute monarch, and the only other absolute monarch in history will be Jesus Christ when He rules the earth.

The Lord Yahweh referred to Nebuchadnezzar as "king of kings" in Ezekiel 26:7. And Artaxerxes claimed to be "king of kings" (Ezra 7:12). Nonetheless "the God of heavens" (cf. vv. 18, 28) had given this mighty monarch, Nebuchadnezzar, his position. The king ruled under the authority of a higher, infinitely more powerful ruler. Jesus Christ will also be recognized as "King of Kings" (1 Tim. 6:15; Rev. 17:14; 19:16).

"At the time of Creation the right to rule over the earth was given man who was to have dominion over it and all the creatures in it (Gen. 1:26). Here Nebuchadnezzar by divine appointment was helping fulfill what God had planned for man."<sup>1</sup>

It took considerable courage for Daniel to tell the most powerful ruler of his time that he was responsible to God (Elohim). God had given Nebuchadnezzar sovereignty (symbolized by the head of the statue), power (the head's weight), strength (the connotation of the head on a body), and glory (its value as gold).

The "head of gold" aptly described Nebuchadnezzar. It also symbolized the kingdom over which he ruled (cf. v. 39).<sup>2</sup> Nebuchadnezzar ruled about 45 years (605-560 B.C.), and his empire only lasted another 21 years. Nebuchadnezzar's father, Nabopolassar, founded the Neo-Babylon Empire in 627 B.C., and it fell to the Persians in 539 B.C. So it existed for only about 88 years, though the Old Babylonian Empire had its roots in Babel (Gen. 11:1-9).

### **The chest and arms 2:39a**

The Persian Empire led by Cyrus the Great would have been inferior in quality to Babylon from Nebuchadnezzar's viewpoint, and it was in reality (cf. 5:28, 31). The rulers of this empire were all Persians.<sup>3</sup> The Persian monarchs could not annul a law once it went into effect (cf. 6:8, 12). This restricted the absolute authority of the king. However, in some respects this kingdom was superior to Babylonia. For example, it covered a larger

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, p. 1335. Cf. Merrill, p. 389.

<sup>2</sup>Young, pp. 73-74; Keil, p. 105.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, p. 117.

geographical area, and it lasted longer (539-331 B.C., about 208 years). The arms of the image evidently represented the two nations of Media and Persia that united to defeat Babylon.

Some interpreters take the second kingdom depicted in the statue as Media, the third as Persia, and the fourth as Rome. Most conservatives hold that they were Persia, Greece, and Rome. However, a few conservatives have argued for the four being Assyria, Media, Persia, and Greece.<sup>1</sup> At least two others have argued for the four being Babylon, Persia, the Greco-Roman empire, and the empire of Antichrist.<sup>2</sup>

### The belly and thighs 2:39b

The world kingdom that succeeded Persia was Greece—under Alexander the Great (cf. 8:20-21). Its territory was even larger than that of Persia. Greece dominated the ancient cradle of civilization from 331 to 31 B.C., so it lasted longer than either Babylonia or Persia: about 300 years.

However, after Alexander the Great died in 323 B.C., his empire split into four parts, and each of Alexander's generals took one piece.<sup>3</sup> Antipater ruled Macedon-Greece, Lysimachus governed Thrace-Asia Minor, Seleucus headed Asia, and Ptolemy reigned over Egypt, Cyrenaica, and Canaan. Greece lacked the unified strength of Persia and Babylonia. Its democratic form of government gave more power to the people and less to the rulers. The two thighs of the statue evidently represented the two major divisions of the Greek Empire: its eastern and western sectors (Syria and Egypt).<sup>4</sup>

"In the want of inward unity lay the weakness or the inferiority in strength of this kingdom, its inferiority as compared with the Babylonian."<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., R. Gurney, "the Four Kingdoms of Daniel 2 and 7," *Themelios* 2 (1977):39-45; John H. Walton, "The Four Kingdoms of Daniel," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 29:1 (March 1986):25-36. See also Collins, pp. 166, 168.

<sup>2</sup>James F. and Marjorie Matheny, *Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron*. See especially pp. 36, 37, 113, 115, 117-18, 132. See Baxter, 4:80-83, for refutation of four views of the kingdoms in view.

<sup>3</sup>Cf. Josephus, 11:8:7.

<sup>4</sup>Leupold, p. 118.

<sup>5</sup>Keil, p. 106.

## The legs and feet 2:40-43

2:40 Rome defeated the last vestige of the Greek Empire in 31 B.C. and ruled for hundreds of years—the Western Roman Empire until A.D. 476, and the Eastern Roman Empire until A.D. 1453. The eastern and western divisions of this empire crushed all opposition with a brutal strength that surpassed any of its predecessors. Certainly iron legs fitly symbolized the Roman Empire. Rome also dominated the map more extensively than any previous kingdom, encompassing almost all of Europe, including Spain and the British Isles as well as India and all the Mediterranean lands. Those legs stood astride most of the ancient world.

"The Roman Empire embraced a much wider territory in which the Western division became fully as strong as the Eastern, and this seems to be portrayed by the two legs."<sup>1</sup>

However, in terms of absolute authority, Rome was indeed an inferior power. The people and the senate played major roles in setting its policies, and they controlled the emperors more than had been true in the preceding empires in Nebuchadnezzar's dream. Nebuchadnezzar was an absolute monarch, and those rulers who followed him (the Persian, Greek, and Roman sovereigns) were increasingly less powerful personally.

Even though each succeeding empire controlled more territory than the preceding one, deterioration from one to the next is obvious. This can be seen in the quality of the metals used to describe each kingdom, the specific gravity of these metals, the relative position of each part of the image (e.g., the head having more honor than the feet), the division of sovereignty (one man and kingdom, to two kingdoms, Medo-Persia, to four parts, following Alexander the Great's death, to ten toes [v. 41]), and the statement of Scripture (v. 39).<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 73.

<sup>2</sup>J. Vernon McGee, *Thru the Bible with J. Vernon McGee*, 3:540.



2:41 In contrast to the preceding empire descriptions, which were quite brief, Daniel gave an extended explanation of the fourth one. The chief feature of the feet is that there were two materials that composed them, and these two materials do not adhere well to one another. Whereas Daniel used metals to describe the kingdoms previously, now he referred to clay, perhaps kiln-fired clay, mixed with iron. The final form of the fourth kingdom—Daniel did not identify it as a fifth kingdom—would not have the cohesiveness that the earlier kingdoms possessed.

What elements are in view in the figures of iron and clay? Obviously one substance is very strong and the other is quite weak. The other metals apparently represent forms of government that were more desirable or less desirable from Nebuchadnezzar's viewpoint, and stronger or weaker in controlling populations in terms of their sovereigns' personal authority. That is probably what is in view here too.

"Verse 41 deals with a later phase or outgrowth of this fourth empire, symbolized by the feet and 10 toes—made up of iron and earthenware, a fragile base for the huge monument. The text clearly implies that this final phase will be marked by some sort of federation rather than by a powerful single realm. The iron may possibly represent the influence of the old Roman culture and tradition, and the pottery may represent the inherent weakness in a socialist society based on relativism in morality and philosophy. Out of this mixture of iron and clay come weakness and confusion, pointing to the approaching day of doom. Within the scope of v. 43 are disunity, class struggle, and even civil war, resulting from the failure of a hopelessly divided society to achieve an integrated world-order. The iron and pottery may coexist, but they cannot combine into a strong and durable world-order."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," pp. 47-48.

2:42 The "iron" is quite clearly the well-organized imperial rule that allowed Rome to dominate her world. The "clay" may refer to some form of government that gives more rule to the people, perhaps democracy<sup>1</sup> and/or socialism. Perhaps the clay represents the democratic Roman Republic and the iron the imperial Roman Empire.

While democratic government has many obvious advantages over other forms of government, particularly the freedoms that its citizens enjoy, it is essentially weak. Its rulers must operate under many checks and balances imposed by the people whom they serve (or are supposed to serve). Perhaps the clay represents the masses of people that compose the different nations of the ten toes.<sup>2</sup> A similar view is that the mixed iron and clay composition simply represents a government made up of diverse elements. Another view is that the iron represents the Roman stock and the clay the Germanic stock.<sup>3</sup> Still another view is that the two feet represent the two main branches of Christianity, western and eastern. Another view is that the iron represents true believers and the clay not genuine but merely professing believers.

The political weakness of democracy is becoming increasingly obvious in America, which has led the world in exemplifying and promoting that form of government. Self-interest gets in the way of political efficiency. People can block political action with demonstrations and lawsuits. In one sense this is good, because it checks the government's powers. But in another sense it makes the job of political leaders much more difficult than if they could simply do as they please.

Imperial power caters to the leaders, whereas democracy caters to those led. It is impossible to have both work effectively at the same time. Therefore, this may be what is in

---

<sup>1</sup>Arno C. Gaebelin, *The Annotated Bible*, 2:3:14.

<sup>2</sup>McGee, 3:541.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, p. 120.

view with the unmixable iron and clay combination—not that America is necessarily in view in this prophecy.<sup>1</sup>

Another indication that democracy, or socialism, may be what is in view in the clay figure, is that people are essentially clay physically (Gen. 2:7). Rule by the people (i.e., democracy) is rule by clay. Thus it should be no surprise that many students of this passage have seen some combination of imperial (or dictatorial) rule and democracy in the final stage of the fourth (Roman) empire.

"The rulers of the succeeding empires had their powers more and more circumscribed; until in the last state of the Roman empire we find iron mixed with miry clay, or brittle pottery—speaking of an attempted union between imperialism and democracy."<sup>2</sup>

Amillennialists, such as Young, believe that there will be no future revival or continuation of the Roman Empire.<sup>3</sup> They believe that Christ defeated the Roman Empire by His death and resurrection at His first advent. Young wrote:

"This vs. [42] merely indicates how thoroughly composite is the nature of the kingdom, a diversity extending even to its toes."<sup>4</sup>

2:43      The reference to "their descendants" seems to stress the amalgamation of people where everyone is equal, at least in theory. Again, diversity seems to be in view.

"The figure of mixing by seed is derived from the sowing of the field with mingled seed, and denotes all the means employed by the rulers to combine the different nationalities, among which the

---

<sup>1</sup>See my comment on Rev. 17:11 in my notes on the Book of Revelation.

<sup>2</sup>Ironside, pp. 36-37. Cf. Arno C. Gaebelein, *The Prophet Daniel*, p. 31.

<sup>3</sup>Young, p. 75.

<sup>4</sup>Ibid., p. 77.

*connubium* [intermarriage] is only spoken of as the most important and successful means."<sup>1</sup>

"The final form of the kingdom will include diverse elements whether this refers to race, political idealism, or sectional interests; and this will prevent the final form of the kingdom from having a real unity."<sup>2</sup>

If this interpretation is correct, we have another problem. The Roman Empire never consisted of a combination of imperial rule and democracy at the same time, even though the people had an increasing voice in government as time went by. It remained imperialistic to its very end. Some see the distinction as between the senate and the people of Rome, the nobles and the commoners.<sup>3</sup> The way that many scholars have dealt with this problem is to view the last stage of the Roman Empire in this vision (vv. 41-43) as still future from Daniel's point of view.

Some scholars believe that the Roman Empire will be revived in the last days. They believe that it ended and that it will somehow come back into existence in the future. Another view, which appeals to me, is that the Roman Empire exists today, though not in the same form in which it existed in ancient times, and it will continue to exist until it attains its "ten-toe" stage.<sup>4</sup> The fact that the toes were attached to and were an integral part of the feet in the image supports this view.

"We live under the divisions of the Roman empire which began 1400 years ago, and which at the time of His coming shall be definitely *ten*."<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 109.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, p. 71.

<sup>3</sup>E.g., Matthew Henry, *Commentary on the Whole Bible*, p. 1086.

<sup>4</sup>Cf. René Pache, *The Return of Jesus Christ*, p. 157.

<sup>5</sup>R. Jamieson, A. R. Fausset, and David Brown, *Commentary Practical and Explanatory on the Whole Bible*, p. 738.

"The Roman Empire is the last, and it will be in existence in the latter days. Actually, it exists today. All of these other empires were destroyed by an enemy from the outside, but no enemy destroyed Rome. Attila the Hun came in and sacked the city, but he was so awestruck by what he saw that he realized he could not handle it. He took his barbarians and left town. The Roman Empire fell apart from within—no enemy destroyed it. Rome is living in the great nations of Europe today: Italy, France, Great Britain, Germany, and Spain are all part of the old Roman Empire. The laws of Rome live on, and her language also. No one speaks Latin today, but it is basic to understanding French, Spanish, and other languages. Her warlike spirit lives on also: Europe has been at war ever since the empire broke up into these kingdoms. ...

"I never speak of the *resurrection* of the Roman Empire; that implies that it died. ... You see, the Roman Empire fell apart like Humpty-Dumpty. There have been a lot of men who tried to put it together again, but they have not succeeded. That was one of the missions of the Roman Catholic church at the beginning. Also, Charlemagne attempted to put it back together. Napoleon tried to do so, and also several emperors of Germany. Hitler and Mussolini attempted it, but so far the man has not yet appeared who will accomplish it. God is not quite ready for him to appear."<sup>1</sup>

"Probably the best solution to the problem [of identifying the feet and toes] is the familiar teaching that Daniel's prophecy actually passes over the present age, the period between the first and second coming of Christ or, more specifically, the period between Pentecost and the rapture of

---

<sup>1</sup>McGee, 3:541.

the church. There is nothing unusual about such a solution as Old Testament prophecies often lump together predictions concerning the first and second coming of Christ without regard for the millennia that lay between (Lk 4:17-19; cf. Is 61:1-2). This interpretation depends first of all upon the evidence leading to the conclusion that the ten-toe stage of the image has not been fulfilled in history and is still prophetic. The familiar attempts in many commentaries to find a ten-toe stage of the image in the fifth and sixth centuries A.D. do not correspond to the actual facts of history and do not fulfill the ten-toe stage. According to Daniel's prophecy, the ten-toe stage is simultaneous, that is, the kingdoms existed side by side and were destroyed by one sudden catastrophic blow. Nothing like this has yet occurred in history."<sup>1</sup>

Daniel 2 emphasizes Rome in its past two stages (the legs), but chapter 7 reveals more about Rome in its future tenfold form (the toes).<sup>2</sup> The toes probably represent rulers (v. 44), though some interpreters understand them to be parts of this kingdom.<sup>3</sup> Leupold believed that the number 10 should not be understood literally but symbolically, indicating totality, and that this is how we should interpret numbers generally in visions and dreams of this type.<sup>4</sup> Yet he interpreted the number two literally: the two arms as Media and Persia, and the two legs as Syria and Egypt.<sup>5</sup>

### The stone 2:44-45

2:44 "Those kings" may refer to the 10 kings represented by the 10 toes. They are quite clearly contemporaneous with one another, not sequential rulers. But they may refer to the kings

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, pp. 72-73. Paragraph division omitted. Cf. Tanner, p. 204.

<sup>2</sup>See J. Dwight Pentecost, *Things to Come*, pp. 318-24.

<sup>3</sup>Keil, p. 109.

<sup>4</sup>Leupold, p. 122.

<sup>5</sup>*Ibid.*, pp. 117, 118.

of the four empires previously mentioned viewed as the sum total of worldly power.

A stone crushed the feet and toes of the image and destroyed it completely (vv. 34-35). It represents a fifth kingdom that God Himself will establish, following the final phase of the fourth kingdom (Rome; cf. Ps. 2:7-9; Rev. 11:15). The stone (or rock), which is a frequent symbol of God and/or Jesus Christ in Scripture (cf. Ps. 18:2; Isa. 8:14; 28:16; Zech. 3:9; Matt. 21:44; 1 Pet. 2:6-8), evidently represents the coming King as well as His earthly kingdom (cf. v. 38: "You are the head of gold"). This figure of a stone pictures God both as a righteous Judge (Deut. 32:4) and as a Savior (Deut. 32:15) in Scripture.

It is interesting that a mere stone, in comparison to the precious metals that make up this image, destroys the image. Messiah's kingdom is not represented as a diamond or other precious gem, but as a humble stone—though big and powerful. The stone image is a reminder that God uses the weak things of the world, including Jesus Christ, to confound the mighty (1 Cor. 1:27).

2:45 The mountain out of which the stone comes may be God Himself (cf. Deut. 32:18; Ps. 18:2; 31:2-3), though a mountain is also a common figure for a kingdom or government in the Bible (cf. Isa. 2:2; 27:13; Jer. 51:25; Mic. 4:1; et al.). Here it may represent the universal kingdom of God that governs all of time and space. God's kingdom, the mountain of verse 35, will fill the earth and will last forever (cf. 2 Sam. 7:16). It will never suffer destruction or be succeeded by another kingdom, unlike all the preceding kingdoms. It will begin with the return of Jesus Christ to the earth, continue through the Millennium, and continue forever in the Eternal State.

"Though the differing metals within the image represent four chronologically successive kingdoms, the single statue suggests that these kingdoms, though diverse in their identity, actually comprise one entity, a world empire opposed to God. This explains why the entire statue is

depicted as destroyed by the rock with a single blow delivered to the feet (vv. 34-35, 44b) and why this event is said to occur 'in the times of those kings,' that is, the kings of the four kingdoms symbolized in the vision (v. 44a)."<sup>1</sup>

"The major burden of the book of Daniel is the tension and conflict between the kingdom of God and the kingdoms of this world."<sup>2</sup>

Whereas almost all expositors agree that the kingdom of God is in view, they disagree on the nature of that kingdom. They also disagree on how it will destroy the preceding kingdoms, and when this destruction will happen. Many amillenarians and postmillenarians believe that Jesus defeated the kingdoms of the world by His death on the cross. Most premillenarians believe that He will defeat the kingdoms of the world when He returns to earth.

If the stone from heaven represents the earthly kingdom of God thoroughly destroying all earthly kingdoms when Messiah returns, as seems true, then it appears inconsistent to view that destruction as beginning with Christ's first coming. He did not destroy earthly kingdoms then. Rather, the destruction fits better Christ's second coming.

One amillennialist wrote that Christianity destroyed the fourth kingdom:

"The disintegrating and corrupt empire crumbled through decay from within as well as through the impact of the sound morals and the healthy life of Christianity that condemned lascivious Rome. ... Christianity was in a sense God's judgment upon sinful Rome."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Robert B. Chisholm Jr., *Handbook on the Prophets*, p. 297.

<sup>2</sup>Eugene H. Merrill, "Daniel as a Contribution to Kingdom Theology," in *Essays in Honor of J. Dwight Pentecost*, p. 217. See also Louridino A. Yuzon, "The Kingdom of God in Daniel," *South East Asia Journal of Theology* 19 (1978):23-27.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, p. 121. Cf. Henry, p. 1086; Young, p. 78.



Many interpreters believe that the fifth kingdom will be composed of all believers of all ages, not just believers in the Church Age, which the preceding quotation suggests.<sup>1</sup>

The term "premillennial" refers to the view that Jesus Christ will return to the earth before He inaugurates His millennial (1,000-year) rule on the earth. The term "amillennial" refers to the view that there will be no literal millennial rule of Christ on earth. His present rule over His church, or His future eternal rule in heaven, is all the rule that we should anticipate, according to its supporters. The "postmillennial" view sees the present Church Age as the millennium. Advocates of this view believe that Jesus will return at the end of the present age in which the church is presently and increasingly overcoming all ungodliness, in their view. Amillenarians and postmillenarians believe in a spiritual kingdom, but to be consistent with the imagery of this vision, it seems that the fifth kingdom must be an earthly kingdom, just as the preceding four kingdoms were. Daniel saw that it "filled the entire *earth*" (v. 35).

Many students of this passage, including myself, find the amillennial and postmillennial interpretations unsatisfying for several reasons:

First, ancient Rome did not fall because of Christianity primarily, but because of its own internal decay and external enemies. But in a sense, all that characterized ancient Rome still exists in various forms and places around the world. Specifically, imperialism and democracy, in one form or another, are still the dominant forms of government.

Second, the effects of the Roman Empire, the fragments of the legs and toes if you will, remained for hundreds of years after Jesus Christ's first coming. Yet the vision pictures all vestiges of this kingdom and its predecessors disappearing quickly (v. 35).

Third, few people today would say that the kingdom of God has in any sense, certainly not politically, conquered the world.

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Keil, p. 110.

The popular title for our age as the "post-Christian era" testifies to this truth.

"Nothing is more evident after nineteen hundred years of Christianity than that the stone, if it reflects the church or the spiritual kingdom which Christ formed at His first coming, is not in any sense of the term occupying the center of the stage in which Gentile power has been destroyed. As a matter of fact, in the twentieth century the church has been an ebbing tide in the affairs of the world; and there has been no progress whatever in the church's gaining control of the world politically. If the image represents the political power of the Gentiles, it is very much still standing."<sup>1</sup>

Fourth, God gave prophecies after Jesus Christ's ascension that He would return to the earth as King of Kings, judge the nations, and rule them with a rod of iron (Rev. 19:11-21).

Fifth, seeing the destruction of the final stage of the fourth kingdom as future seems more in harmony with the facts of history and with other Scriptures (cf. 7:24; Rev. 17:12).<sup>2</sup>

One premillennial view sees Jesus' messianic kingdom as beginning when He returns to earth. Another premillennial view sees it as beginning at His first advent but moving to earth when He returns. In both views the stone in Nebuchadnezzar's vision represents Christ and His kingdom.

Daniel concluded by explaining to Nebuchadnezzar that the sovereign God had revealed to him what would happen in the future. He further affirmed that the dream represented reality, and that the interpretation that he had given was reliable.

"Daniel 2:31-45 indicates that the Aramaic word for 'kingdom' may include the concept of a kingdom with both

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 76.

<sup>2</sup>For eight reasons why the church cannot be this final kingdom, see Fruchtenbaum, pp. 109-12.

earthly/temporal and heavenly/eternal aspects. The context in Daniel 2 allows for one kingdom beginning on earth and continuing into the eternal state. This kingdom is established by God, fills the whole earth after destroying all other earthly kingdoms, and will never be destroyed."<sup>1</sup>

Wiersbe noted four implications of this vision: God is in control of history; human enterprises decline as time goes by; it will be difficult for things to hold together at the end of the age; and Jesus Christ will return, destroy His enemies, and establish His kingdom.<sup>2</sup>

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S DREAM OF THE STATUE	
The materials	Their interpretation
Gold	Nebuchadnezzar and the Babylonian Empire
Silver	The Persian Empire
Bronze	The Greek Empire
Iron	The Roman Empire of the past
Iron and Clay	The Roman Empire right before Christ's second coming
Stone	The messianic kingdom of Christ

## **9. The consequences of Daniel's interpretation 2:46-49**

2:46 Clearly, Daniel had done what everyone considered humanly impossible. He had told the king the dream that Nebuchadnezzar alone knew, and had perhaps even forgotten, and he had given an interpretation of the dream that made sense to the king. Consequently, Nebuchadnezzar concluded that Daniel must be some sort of god, and he proceeded to

<sup>1</sup>Kenneth L. Barker, "Evidence from Daniel," in *A Case for Premillennialism: A New Consensus*, p. 134.

<sup>2</sup>Wiersbe, pp. 260-61. For an extensive discussion of the government of the messianic kingdom, see Fruchtenbaum, pp. 565-77.

treat him as one by bowing before him, presenting an offering to him, and burning incense to him (cf. Acts 10:25; 14:13).

Daniel's lack of protestation does not indicate that he viewed himself as a god. He was simply in no position to contradict the misguided adoration of an absolute monarch such as Nebuchadnezzar. Furthermore, Nebuchadnezzar was not saying that Daniel was the true God.

"... Daniel, the slave of men and servant of God, received the homage of a prostrate king just as the Lord Jesus Christ, who was submissive to men and the servant of God, will receive the homage of all men [cf. Phil. 2:10-11]."<sup>1</sup>

2:47      Verbally, Nebuchadnezzar acknowledged the sovereignty of Daniel's God.

"We must understand that Nebuchadnezzar is not confessing a personal faith in Yahweh God alone. As a polytheist, he could say this. While this does amount to an acknowledgment that Daniel's God is supreme, it is not the same as saying that his God is the only deity. As a result, Nebuchadnezzar remained in spiritual darkness and without eternal life."<sup>2</sup>

2:48      The king also promoted Daniel to be head man over the province of Babylon and chief of the wise men. He evidently became the ruler in charge of this most important province (cf. 3:2). Normally this position would have gone to a Chaldean, a member of the "master race" of Babylonian society. The fact that Nebuchadnezzar gave it to a Jewish captive shows the tremendous respect that Daniel had earned with this revelation.

2:49      At Daniel's request, the king also promoted Daniel's three friends to positions of authority within the provincial administration (cf. vv. 17-18). Daniel himself remained in the

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, p. 40.

<sup>2</sup>Tanner, p. 211.

palace and was available to Nebuchadnezzar as an adviser when the king needed him. God prepared for the arrival of thousands of exiled Judahites (in 597 and 586 B.C.) by placing men in authority who were sympathetic to their needs (cf. Joseph).

"Thus Daniel, the obscure Jewish captive who could have been lost to history like many others if he had compromised in chapter 1, is now exalted to a place of great honor and power. Like Joseph in Egypt, he was destined to play an important part in the subsequent history of his generation."<sup>1</sup>

"This chapter, so basic to an understanding of all God's dealing in history and prophecy, reveals three important truths: 1. God, not man is sovereign in world affairs. ... 2. Our sovereign God has a plan for the world. ... 3. God is ordering history according to His plan."<sup>2</sup>

AN OVERVIEW OF DANIEL'S PROPHECIES IN CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER <sup>3</sup>			
Date	Daniel's Age	Reference	Prophecy
602 B.C.	ca. 18	2:1-45	Great image
553 B.C.	ca. 67	7:1-28	Four beasts, Ancient of Days
551 B.C.	ca. 69	8:1-27	Ram and he-goat
539 B.C.	ca. 81	5:1-31	Fall of Babylon
539 B.C.	ca. 81	9:1-27	Seventy sevens
536 B.C.	ca. 84	11:2-45	Future of nations
536 B.C.	ca. 84	12:1-13	Future of Israel

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 78.

<sup>2</sup>Campbell, p. 27.

<sup>3</sup>Fruchtenbaum, p. 174.

**B. NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S GOLDEN IMAGE CH. 3**

"Between these chapters (ii. and vii.) there are inserted four events belonging to the times of the first and second world-kingdom, which partly reveal the attempts of the rulers of the world to compel the worshippers of the true God to pray to their idols and their gods, together with the failure of this attempt (ch. iii. and vi.), and partly the humiliations of the rulers of the world, who were boastful of their power, under the judgments of God (ch. iv. and v.), and bring under our consideration the relation of the rulers of this world to the Almighty God of heaven and earth and to the true fearers of His name. The narratives of these four events follow each other in chronological order, because they are in actual relation bound together, and therefore also the occurrences (ch. v. and vi.) which belong to the time subsequent to the vision in ch. vii. are placed before this vision, so that the two revelations regarding the development of the world-power form a frame within which is contained the historical section which describes the character of that world-power."<sup>1</sup>

"In the first chapter of Daniel heathen customs were judged; in the second chapter heathen philosophy was judged; and in the third chapter heathen pride is judged."<sup>2</sup>

One writer saw a revelation of moral conditions that would characterize "the times of the Gentiles" in chapters 3 through 6:

"In other words, we are now permitted to see the use which the Gentiles will make of the power entrusted to them in responsibility."<sup>3</sup>

There is a logical connection between the image that Nebuchadnezzar saw in his dream (ch. 2) and the image that he had built on the plain of Dura (ch. 3). Perhaps he got the idea for the statue that he built from the statue that he saw in his dream. He forgot, however, the lesson that he had

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 84.

<sup>2</sup>McGee, 3:543.

<sup>3</sup>Dennett, p. 36.

learned about Yahweh's sovereignty (2:47). Evidently thoughts of his position as the head of gold made him proud.

We know that this chapter describes events that followed those in chapter 2 because Daniel's three friends had assumed their positions of administrative leadership in Babylon (v. 12). How much later is unclear, though it seems that several years had elapsed. Dyer believed that the likely background for these events was an attempt to seize power from Nebuchadnezzar that occurred in December 595 and January 594 B.C., which the Babylonian Chronicles record.<sup>1</sup>

### **1. The worship of Nebuchadnezzar's statue 3:1-7**

3:1 The whole image that the king built was gold. The head of the image that Nebuchadnezzar had seen in his dream was also gold. Probably the image that Nebuchadnezzar had seen in his dream became the model for the statue that he built. This statue undoubtedly would have represented Nebuchadnezzar as the personification of the Babylonian Empire. Similarly, huge statues of Vladimir Lenin that were erected in various countries within the former Soviet Union represented that Union.

“There are numerous reports of huge statues from the ancient world.”<sup>2</sup>

"Daniel had told him [Nebuchadnezzar] that he was the head of gold (2:38) but that he would be followed by 'another kingdom inferior to you' (2:39) made of silver (2:32). Rejecting now the idea that any kingdom could follow his own, he may have determined to show the permanence of his golden kingdom by having the entire image covered with gold."<sup>3</sup>

This image stood about 99 feet high and nine feet wide. This is the height of a ten-story building and the width of a 9-feet

---

<sup>1</sup>Dyer, p. 706.

<sup>2</sup>Collins, p. 181.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid.

by 12-feet room. The famous Colossus of Rhodes, the tallest statue known in antiquity,<sup>1</sup> stood 70 cubits (105 feet) high at the entrance to that ancient port. It is interesting that the dimensions of this statue, 60 cubits and 6 cubits, contain the number six, which also appears in the mark of the Beast, 666, who will be a latter-day equivalent of Nebuchadnezzar.<sup>2</sup>

If the statue was a figure of a human, as seems very likely, it probably stood on a substantial base since it was quite narrow for such a tall statue.<sup>3</sup> However, it may have represented an animal, or a combination of human and animal. Archaeologists have discovered Babylonian images of all these types.<sup>4</sup> These images are also sometimes quite narrow in proportion to their height. Customarily these were wooden statues overlaid with gold (cf. Isa. 40:19; 41:7; Jer. 10:3-9).<sup>5</sup> Herodotus described a solid-gold statue 18 feet high in Babylon.<sup>6</sup> But Nebuchadnezzar's image would have been much heavier and more costly.

In view of Nebuchadnezzar's extraordinary ego (cf. ch. 4), the image was probably a likeness of him.<sup>7</sup> However, there is no evidence that the Mesopotamians ever worshiped statues of their rulers as divine beings during the ruler's lifetime.<sup>8</sup> Some writers have suggested that the image may have resembled an obelisk similar to those found in Egypt.<sup>9</sup> The image may have represented Nebuchadnezzar's patron god, Nebo.<sup>10</sup>

The most probable site of the Dura Plain seems to be six miles southeast of Babylon.<sup>11</sup> The Aramaic word *dura*

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid..

<sup>2</sup>See Ironside, p. 47.

<sup>3</sup>Keil, p. 118.

<sup>4</sup>See Leupold, p. 137; Young, pp. 83-85.

<sup>5</sup>Montgomery, p. 195.

<sup>6</sup>Herodotus, *The Histories*, 1.183.

<sup>7</sup>Feinberg, p. 44; McGee, 3:543.

<sup>8</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 50.

<sup>9</sup>E.g., Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1337; Young, p. 84; Baldwin, p. 99.

<sup>10</sup>Dyer, p. 706.

<sup>11</sup>Montgomery, p. 197. Cf. Keil, pp. 118-19.



("fortification") is common and refers to a place enclosed by a wall or perhaps mountains.

3:2 Nebuchadnezzar summoned his officials to the image for what he probably intended to be a demonstration of loyalty to him.

"The fairly recent date of the establishment of the Babylonian Empire as the successor to Assyria (at least in its southern half) made it appropriate for Nebuchadnezzar to assemble all the local and provincial leaders from every part of his domain and, in essence, exact from them a solemn oath of loyalty ..."<sup>1</sup>

The Septuagint translation of verse 1 dates these events in the eighteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar (about 587 B.C.), though that is not necessarily accurate. Whitcomb speculated that this event may have occurred shortly after the Babylonian conquest of Jerusalem (about 585 B.C.).<sup>2</sup> Such an empire-wide demonstration of the superiority of Babylon's gods and king would have been understandable then. What follows is the account of a ceremony designed to unify the empire under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, which normally would have happened fairly early in his reign (closer to 605 B.C.).

The religious connotations of the gathering are unclear, but it was probably not a summons to worship one idol as God. The Babylonians were a polytheistic people and worshiped many gods.

"A refusal to yield homage to the gods of the kingdom they regarded as an act of hostility against the kingdom and its monarch, while every one might at the same time honour his own national god. This acknowledgment, that the gods of the kingdom were the more powerful, every heathen could grant; and thus, Nebuchadnezzar demanded nothing in a religious point of view

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 51.

<sup>2</sup>Whitcomb, p. 53.

which every one of his subjects could not yield. To him, therefore, the refusal of the Jews could not but appear as opposition to the greatness of his kingdom."<sup>1</sup>

"What did Nebuchadnezzar really have in mind in making this image? We can observe here three things: (1) The making of this image shows the rebellion of Nebuchadnezzar against the God of heaven who had given him world dominion. Instead of gratitude, this is a definite act of rebellion. (2) This also shows his vaunted [boastful] pride in making an image which evidently was self-deification. The Roman emperors also attempted this later on. (3) Obviously, Nebuchadnezzar was seeking a unifying principle to weld together the tribes and tongues and peoples of his kingdom into one great totalitarian government. In other words, he was attempting to institute a world religion. This was nothing in the world but a repetition of the tower of Babel—a forming of one religion for the world."<sup>2</sup>

3:3 Some of the titles of the officials named in the text are Persian and some are Babylonian. Daniel may have updated some of these Babylonian titles with modern Persian equivalents when he wrote the book in its final form. Or perhaps they were already common when the events of this chapter occurred.

The satraps were the highest political officials in each province. The prefects (princes) were military chiefs. The governors (captains) were heads of sections of the provinces. The counselors (advisers, judges) were high-ranking judges. The treasurers were superintendents of the treasury. The judges (counselors) were secondary judges, and the magistrates (sheriffs) were lower level legal officials. The administrators (officials) were subordinates of the satraps.<sup>3</sup> These groups

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 124.

<sup>2</sup>McGee, 3:544.

<sup>3</sup>Keil, pp. 120-21.

represented all the administrative government officials of the wide-ranging empire, and they spoke many different languages (v. 7).

3:4-5      The musical instruments referred to also have Persian names.<sup>1</sup> Some of these instruments were Greek as well. The Greeks had an influence on Babylonia earlier than Daniel's time.<sup>2</sup> These were various wind and stringed instruments.<sup>3</sup> The Babylonians seem to have been an almost music-crazed culture (cf. Ps. 137:3; Isa. 14:11).<sup>4</sup>

3:6                "The story of the three young men who were thrown into the fire because they would not worship the image (Dan. 3), brings to mind the great brick-kilns outside the city, where the bricks required for certain purposes in the vast building projects of Nebuchadnezzar were baked. Some of these great ovens were found in the [archaeological] excavations. Worth noting in this connection is a rather Solomonic judicial directive of the ruler Rim Sin (1750 B.C.), which appears in a recently published document of the Yale Babylonian Collection. He speaks thus concerning four men of Larsa: 'Because they threw a young slave into an oven, throw ye a slave into a furnace.' Clearly, that sort of thing was nothing new in Babylonia."<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, *A Survey ...*, p. 375; K. A. Kitchen, "The Aramaic in Daniel," in *Notes on Some Problems in the Book of Daniel*, p. 43; T. C. Mitchell and R. Joyce, "The Musical Instruments in Nebuchadnezzar's Orchestra," in *ibid.*, pp. 19-27.

<sup>2</sup>W. F. Albright, *From Stone Age to Christianity*, p. 259; E. M. Yamauchi, *Greece and Babylon*, pp. 17-24; Leupold, pp. 142-43.

<sup>3</sup>For a full description of each, see Mitchell and Joyce, pp. 19-27; Leupold, pp. 144-45; Keil, pp. 122-24; Charles H. Dyer, "The Musical Instruments in Daniel 3," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 147:588 (October-December 1990):426-36.

<sup>4</sup>See Ironside, pp. 48-50, for interesting insights into misleading and proper music in worship.

<sup>5</sup>E. G. Kraeling, *Rand McNally Bible Atlas*, p. 323. See also J. B. Alexander, "New Light on the Fiery Furnace," *Journal of Biblical Literature* 69:4 (December 1950):375-76.

Other authorities believed that the furnace was beehive or funnel-shaped and was constructed of metal.<sup>1</sup>

In the Tribulation, the Antichrist will command everyone to worship him and his image (Rev. 13:3-18).<sup>2</sup>

3:7 "The devil tempts us to destroy our faith, but God tests us to develop our faith, because a faith that can't be tested can't be trusted."<sup>3</sup>

## 2. The charge against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego 3:8-12

3:8-11 The Chaldeans who brought charges against Daniel's three friends were nobles, not just astrologers. The Aramaic term *gubrin kasda'in*, which is used here to describe them, makes this clear.<sup>4</sup> They were in a position to profit personally from the execution of the three Jews, perhaps even to step into the government positions that they occupied.

3:12 The charge was disregarding the king's command concerning pledging allegiance by bowing before the image. This constituted proof that the three Jews did not worship the king's gods and were not loyal to him.

"In situations like this, no crime is greater than nonconformity, yet that is exactly what God asks of us when the things of the world are arrayed against the things of God (Rom. 12:1-2)."<sup>5</sup>

Many Israelites worshipped idols in Canaan, and Moses had predicted that they would worship them in exile (Deut. 4:27-28). But these young men were as scrupulous about their observance of the Mosaic Law as Daniel was. For them, death was preferable to disobedience. Nebuchadnezzar's gods were

---

<sup>1</sup>See Goldingay, p. 70.

<sup>2</sup>The Tribulation refers to the future seven-year period of extreme distress on the earth, especially for the Jews (cf. 9:27; 12:1; Jer. 30:7; Matt. 24:21; Rev. 6—18).

<sup>3</sup>Wiersbe, p. 262.

<sup>4</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 53.

<sup>5</sup>Feinberg, p. 44.

responsible for his success, according to Mesopotamian thinking, and to disregard them was the same as rejecting Nebuchadnezzar.

"The Chaldeans' attack, and Nebuchadnezzar's reaction, suggests that they saw the Jews' stance as involving both disloyalty (as if it were the king's statue) and impiety (as if it were a god's). Whatever the nature of the statue, it held religion and state together."<sup>1</sup>

The term "Jew" usually appears as a disparaging and insulting term, as here, wherever it occurs in the Old Testament. It is a term that the Israelites' enemies used to describe them (cf. 6:13).

The absence of reference to Daniel here raises questions. Had he worshiped the image? Was he away on government business? Was he occupied with pressing matters? Was he ill and unable to attend the ceremony? Or did he enjoy such an exalted position or such favor with the king that these Chaldeans dared not accuse him? The writer did not explain this mystery. It was the response of Daniel's three Hebrew friends that he wanted to stress. It seems safe to assume that, if Daniel had been present, he would have responded as his three friends did. Another explanation of Daniel's absence follows:

"Those who had proven themselves loyal at the royal court in Babylon would have been exempt from the ceremony. Thus Daniel did not have to appear at the gathering because he had been with Nebuchadnezzar at the royal court."<sup>2</sup>

"God does not test all of His children at the same time or in the same manner."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Goldingay, p. 73.

<sup>2</sup>Dyer, in *The Old ...*, p. 706.

<sup>3</sup>Campbell, p. 33.

**3. The response of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego**  
**3:13-18**

- 3:13-14 Nebuchadnezzar reacted to the news of the three Jews' response angrily (cf. 2:12; 3:19). He evidently took their disobedience as a personal affront as well as an act of insubordination. Nevertheless he controlled himself sufficiently to give them a second chance to obey, and he restated the punishment for disobedience. The king distinguished between serving his gods and worshiping his golden image (v. 14). This confirms that the worship of the image was primarily political rather than religious. However, failure to worship reflected disbelief in the king's gods, which was evidence of these Jews' lack of cooperation in things Babylonian.
- 3:15 Even though Nebuchadnezzar had witnessed and testified to the sovereignty of Yahweh previously (2:47), he clearly did not believe that even He could save the accused. Perhaps he believed that giving information from a dream was one thing, but saving people from a fiery death was something requiring greater supernatural power (cf. 2 Kings 18:33; Isa. 36:13-20). Similarly, many people today believe that God inspired the Bible, but they do not believe that He can deliver them from their serious personal problems, much less solve world problems. The king set himself above all gods; he said that none of these gods could deliver the three Hebrews from him. He claimed absolute authority in political and religious realms.
- 3:16 The three young men told the king that they did not need to give him an answer. "We" is emphatic in the original text and implies a contrast with Yahweh. God would give the king an answer. Perhaps they meant that Nebuchadnezzar should have had no question about their loyalty to him. They did not need to argue that. Surely the king knew that their faith prohibited them from worshiping any god but Yahweh. They were known to be Jews (1:6-7).
- 3:17-18 They said they believed that their God could deliver them from any fiery furnace and that He would deliver them. However, they also acknowledged the possibility that it might be God's will not to deliver them. God does not always save the lives of

His children when they face martyrdom. Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego knew this, but they had no question about God's ability to save them (cf. Matt. 10:28). Whether God would deliver them or not, they refused to serve idols or to bow before the king's image (Exod. 20:3-5).

"The quiet, modest, yet withal very positive attitude of faith that these three men display is one of the noblest examples in the Scriptures of faith fully resigned to the will of God. These men ask for no miracle; they expect none. Theirs is the faith that says: 'Though He slay me, yet will I trust in Him,' Job 13:15."<sup>1</sup>

"... Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego loved Yahweh more than life itself. Not only had they learned to recite the Shema—'Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God, the LORD is one. Love the LORD with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength' (Deut 6:4-5)—but they made it the center of their lives. For them the will and glory of Yahweh meant more than fame, position, or security."<sup>2</sup>

"They believed not only in God's omnipotence but also in God's wise sovereignty ... and that is a great lesson to learn in the midst of suffering."<sup>3</sup>

"Those who believe the saying, 'Every man has his price!' should consider well the response of these men in this crisis when their lives were at stake. They could not be bought—for any price!"<sup>4</sup>

"The courteous but determined refusal of the Hebrews should be carefully observed. They had obeyed 'the powers that be' as far as conscience

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 153.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 54. Cf. Acts 20:24.

<sup>3</sup>Stephen J. Bramer, "Suffering in the Writing Prophets (Isaiah to Malachi)," in *Why, O God? Suffering and Disability in the Bible and the Church*, p. 158.

<sup>4</sup>Campbell, p. 35.

permitted. They journeyed to the Plain of Dura. And right at the point where conscience shouted, 'No further!' they rejected the temptation to be arrogant in their non-conformity. As Daniel before them had been courteous in his request to follow his convictions, so these three verbally acknowledge Nebuchadnezzar as king, while committing their ultimate allegiance to the King of kings alone. (cf. Acts 5:29; Mat. 22:21.)."<sup>1</sup>

#### **4. The execution of the king's command 3:19-23**

3:19 The determination of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego to withhold the form of allegiance that Nebuchadnezzar required made the king as angry as he could be. He apparently ordered the furnace heated to seven times its normal heat in order to make an example of them. "Seven times more" is a proverbial expression and hyperbole for "much more" in some passages of Scripture (cf. Prov. 24:16; 26:16), and it probably has that meaning here too. "As hot as possible" seems to be the idea.

"His furnace was hot, but he himself got hotter! And when a man gets full of fury, he gets full of folly. There is no fool on earth like a man who has lost his temper. And Nebuchadnezzar did a stupid thing. He ought to have cooled the furnace seven times *less* if he had wanted to hurt them [so that they would suffer longer]; but instead of that in his fury he heated it seven times *more*."<sup>2</sup>

3:20-23 The fact that they were fully clothed when thrown into the furnace (v. 21) will feature later in the story. The Persian nobles later tried to have Daniel executed by getting King Darius to throw him to the lions (6:7; cf. Rev. 12:10). That the men who threw them into the fire perished is testimony to the faithfulness of God's promise to Abraham (Gen. 12:3). God cursed those who cursed His chosen people. Compare the fate

---

<sup>1</sup>D. Ford, *Daniel*, p. 107. See Charles C. Ryrie, *Biblical Answers to Tough Questions*, ch. 1: "The Question of Civil Disobedience," pp. 9-22.

<sup>2</sup>G. R. King, *Daniel*, p. 85.



of Haman (Esth. 7:10). The fate of these valiant Babylonian warriors should have warned the king.

"Judging from bas-reliefs, it would seem that Mesopotamian smelting furnaces tended to be like an old-fashioned glass milk-bottle in shape, with a large opening for the insertion of the ore to be smelted and a smaller aperture at ground level for the admission of wood and charcoal to furnish the heat. There must have been two or more smaller holes at this same level to permit the insertion of pipes connected with large bellows, when it was desired to raise the temperature beyond what the flue or chimney would produce. Undoubtedly the furnace itself was fashioned of very thick adobe, resistant to intense heat. The large upper door was probably raised above the level of the fire bed so that the metal smelted from the ore would spill on the ground in case the crucibles were upset."<sup>1</sup>

### **5. God's deliverance of His servants 3:24-27**

3:24-25 As Nebuchadnezzar watched what was happening inside the furnace, he marveled to see that the three Jewish men did not perish in an instant. Rising from his seat, he saw them loosed from their bonds and walking around inside the furnace.

"Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego were not only saved from the conflagration, but also from asphyxiation, CO [carbon dioxide] Poisoning, and possibly from other toxic fumes generated during the combustion process."<sup>2</sup>

What startled Nebuchadnezzar even more was the presence of a fourth person with the Hebrews. The fourth person had an unusual appearance, like "a son of gods" (literally). The king probably meant that this fourth person appeared to be super-

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 56.

<sup>2</sup>Charles E. Baukal Jr., "The Fiery Furnace," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 171:682 (April-June 2014):170.

human or divine from his viewpoint as a pagan polytheist.<sup>1</sup> Evidently the fourth person was either an angel<sup>2</sup> or the angel of the LORD, the pre-incarnate Christ (cf. Gen. 16:13; et al.).<sup>3</sup> He was with the three men in their affliction and protected them from harm in it (cf. Exod. 3:12; Ps. 23:4-5; Isa. 7:14; 43:1-3; 63:9; Matt. 28:20; Heb. 13:5-6). He did not deliver them from the fire but in it (cf. Rom. 8:37).

3:26 Nebuchadnezzar then drew as close to the large door of the furnace as he could. It stood open to provide a view inside. He called to the three victims to come out of the furnace, and they responded obediently this time. The fourth person disappeared as mysteriously as He had appeared.

The king described Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego as servants of "the Most High God" (v. 26). This title for God appears 13 times in Daniel, more than in any other book except Psalms. In seven of those times either Nebuchadnezzar used it to describe God (3:36; 4:2, 17, 34) or Daniel used it in speaking of God to Nebuchadnezzar (4:24, 25, 32). Daniel used it twice when speaking to Belshazzar about Nebuchadnezzar (5:18, 21). It occurs four times in chapter 7, which is Daniel's vision of the four beasts, three times in the words of the interpreting angel (7:18, 25, 27), and once in Daniel's words in that chapter (7:22).

"... it [the title "the most High God"] suggests a God of universal authority, but of otherwise undefined personal qualities. For a pagan, it would denote only the highest among many gods, but as an epithet [designation] of El it was accepted in early OT times and applied to Yahweh, so that for a Jew it has monotheistic (or mono-Yahwistic) implications."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 158; Collins, p. 190.

<sup>2</sup>Fruchtenbaum, p. 135.

<sup>3</sup>Tanner, p. 254.

<sup>4</sup>Goldingay, p. 72.

With this title the king ascribed greater power to the God of these Jews than to any other. He had obviously delivered them, as they said that He could (v. 17), and the leaders of the Babylonian Empire had witnessed the miracle.

3:27 The three Jews had escaped every form of destruction, even the smell of smoke. The ropes that bound them, symbolic of Nebuchadnezzar's power over them, were gone, undoubtedly burned up by the fire.

"Just as the reign of Nebuchadnezzar is symbolic of the entire period of the times of the Gentiles, so the deliverance of Daniel's three companions is typical of the deliverance of Israel during the period of Gentile domination. Particularly at the end of the Gentile period Israel will be in fiery affliction, but as Isaiah prophesied, 'But now thus saith the LORD that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, I have called thee by thy name; thou art mine. When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee; and through the rivers, they shall not overflow thee: when thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burned; neither shall the flame kindle upon thee' (Is 43:1-2)."<sup>1</sup>

The three Hebrew young men quenched the fury of flames with their faith in their faithful God (Heb. 11:34; cf. 1 Macc. 2:59).

"The Chaldeans worshipped the fire, as a sort of image of the sun, so that, in restraining the fire now, God put contempt, not only upon their king, but upon their god too."<sup>2</sup>

## **6. The consequences of God's deliverance 3:28-30**

3:28 Nebuchadnezzar's acknowledgment of Yahweh's superior power was an advance upon his earlier tribute to Yahweh's

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 92.

<sup>2</sup>Henry, p. 1088.

ability to reveal mysteries (2:47). The pagans believed that the gods used messengers to carry out their will. Evidently the king viewed the fourth person in the furnace as a messenger from Yahweh. This deliverance made Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego's God superior to all others in Nebuchadnezzar's eyes. He had to acknowledge Yahweh's sovereignty over his own god, Nebo, in this respect.

3:29 Therefore Nebuchadnezzar issued a decree ordering everyone to respect Yahweh and to say nothing against Him.

Nebuchadnezzar's ability to cancel one of his laws and replace it with another is an evidence of the might of his personal power. Rulers of the Persian Empire, which replaced the Babylonian Empire (cf. 2:38-39), could not do this; it was legally impossible for them to override a previously written law (cf. 6:8, 12, 15; Esth. 1:19).

Nebuchadnezzar made Judaism a recognized religion with rights to toleration and respect.<sup>1</sup> His edict may have been responsible, in part, for the fairly comfortable conditions under which the Israelites lived in Babylonian exile.

Life for the Judean captives was comparatively pleasant in Babylon, in contrast to the bondage that their ancestors had experienced in Egypt. The Judahites were able to maintain some of their national traditions, such as rule by elders and the teaching ministries of priests and prophets. They enjoyed freedom of movement in the land of Babylon; elders of the people came to visit Ezekiel, who occupied his own house (Ezek. 8:1). The people could correspond with friends back in Judah (Jer. 29:1, 25). Favorable employment opportunities were also open to them (2 Kings 24:14-16), and many of them lived on fine, fertile land (Ezek. 1:1, 3; 3:15, 23). Nevertheless, being uprooted from the Promised Land and their settled conditions there constituted a judgment from God.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Goldingay, p. 75.

<sup>2</sup>Wood, *A Survey ...*, pp. 385-87.

This chapter began with Nebuchadnezzar intending to unite his kingdom under one religion (v. 5), but it ends with him acknowledging Yahweh's sovereignty and permitting His worship. This does not necessarily mean, of course, that Nebuchadnezzar abandoned his pagan polytheism and cast himself wholly on Yahweh in saving faith, though some interpreters have concluded that he did come into a saving relationship with Yahweh.<sup>1</sup>

3:30 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego also received the king's blessing.

"... their position was made easier and their work more successful in spite of the opposition of those that begrudged them their success."<sup>2</sup>

Nebuchadnezzar approved their faith in Yahweh, who had demonstrated Himself to be as powerful as His three faithful followers had claimed that He was.

"This historical incident seems to have prophetic significance as well. In the coming Tribulation a Gentile ruler (7:8) will demand for himself the worship that belongs to God (2 Thes. 2:4; Rev. 13:8). Any who refuse to acknowledge his right to receive worship will be killed (Rev. 13:15). Assuming political and religious power, he will oppress Israel (Rev. 13:7). Most of the people in the world, including many in Israel, will submit to and worship him. But a small remnant in Israel, like the three in Daniel's day, will refuse. Many who will not worship the Antichrist will be severely punished; some will be martyred for their faithfulness to Jesus Christ. But a few will be delivered from those persecutions by the Lord Jesus Christ at His second coming [cf. Zech. 13:8; Rev. 12:10-17]. In the forthcoming Tribulation period God will do for this believing remnant what He did for Daniel's three companions. They withstood the decree of the king, and though they were not exempted from

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Dyer, in *The Old ...*, p. 709.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, p. 163.

suffering and oppression they were delivered out of it by the God they trusted."<sup>1</sup>

This chapter advances the revelation that God gave Daniel in the preceding ones. Previously God had revealed Himself as the only God who can reveal mysteries: things formerly unknown but now made clear by Him. The image that Nebuchadnezzar saw in his dream, and that Daniel interpreted (ch. 2), was a revelation of future world kingdoms and their characteristics. Chapter 3 shows that Yahweh is powerful enough to control history miraculously. He does so to remain true to His promises to His people, and to deliver those who put their trust in Him. He can reveal the future, but He can also bring it into existence. Chapter 2 demonstrates the wisdom of God, and chapter 3 the power of God primarily (cf. 2:20-23). The witness to Yahweh's superior powers was the most powerful human being of his day: King Nebuchadnezzar. Thus there should be no question about God's greatness.

#### C. NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S PRIDE AND HUMBLING CH. 4

We have seen, in the first three chapters of Daniel, that King Nebuchadnezzar came to an increasing appreciation of the greatness of the Jews' God. In this chapter, we see that he learned that Yahweh is sovereign over kings as well as kingdoms (cf. ch. 2). As the head of Gentile power in his day, Nebuchadnezzar's humbling probably has typical significance, suggesting the final overthrow of Gentile world dominion by the smiting stone: Jesus Christ (2:35, 44-45). However, the main lesson of this chapter is the sovereignty of Yahweh over the greatest human sovereign in the world (cf. vv. 17, 18, 22, 24, 25, 26, 30, 31, 32, 34, 36, 37).<sup>2</sup>

"In the light of other passages in the Bible speaking prophetically of Babylon and its ultimate overthrow, of which Isaiah 13 and 14 may be taken as an example, it becomes clear that the contest between God and Nebuchadnezzar is a broad illustration of God's dealings with the entire human race and

---

Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1340. Paragraph division omitted.

<sup>2</sup>See Judah J. Slotki, *Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah*, p. 30.

especially the Gentile world in its creaturely pride and failure to recognize the sovereignty of God."<sup>1</sup>

The fact that Babylon falls in the very next chapter seems to support this conclusion.

"If the preceding history [ch. 3] teaches how the Almighty God wonderfully protects His true worshippers against the enmity of the world-power, this narrative may be regarded as an actual confirmation of the truth that this same God can so humble the rulers of the world, if in presumptuous pride they boast of their might, as to constrain them to recognize Him as the Lord over the kings of the earth."<sup>2</sup>

This chapter is unique in the Bible. It is a decree that Nebuchadnezzar issued following his recovery from temporary insanity. The decree contains the record of events resulting in the issuing of the decree. Daniel himself may have written this account as a decree, or he may have inserted the king's actual decree from another source. It is unique in Scripture, being the only chapter composed by a pagan—if Nebuchadnezzar wrote it, and if he was unconverted.

The structure of the chapter is essentially ABBA: chiastic. It begins and ends with praise of God (vv. 1-3, 34-37), and in the middle there is the narration of Nebuchadnezzar's dream (vv. 4-18) and its interpretation and fulfillment (vv. 19-33).

"...key images in Nebuchadnezzar's dream in Daniel 4 were similar to those in the *Gilgamesh Epic*, thus having special significance to the literate King Nebuchadnezzar and to his servant Daniel."<sup>3</sup>

These key images are: dreams, the search for fame, the tree, the watchers, and the uncivilized man. They occur in reverse order in the two documents: the *Gilgamesh Epic* and the Book of Daniel.

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 95.

<sup>2</sup>Keil, p. 134.

<sup>3</sup>Jason A. Garrison, "Nebuchadnezzar's Dream: An Inversion of Gilgamesh Imagery," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 169:674 (April-June 2012):173. The *Gilgamesh Epic* is an ancient Mesopotamian account of a universal flood.

The time of this incident seems to be considerably later than the event recorded in chapter 3. Nebuchadnezzar had finished extensive building projects (v. 30), possibly including the famous Hanging Gardens of Babylon. He reigned a total of 43 years (605-562 B.C.). Perhaps it was toward the end of his reign that these events took place. Pentecost and Whitcomb estimated that the date may have been about 570 B.C.<sup>1</sup> If so, Daniel would probably have been about 50 years old. The Septuagint dates the incident in the eighteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign, in verse 4 (about 587 B.C.), but that seems to reflect the opinion of the translators rather than the inspired writer. The Septuagint connected verses 1 through 3 to the end of chapter 3, and began chapter 4 with 4:4.

"Daniel chap. 4 provides one of the Bible's greatest lessons about pride, particularly for those who look at their own accomplishments and give themselves all the credit."<sup>2</sup>

### 1. Nebuchadnezzar's introductory doxology 4:1-3

- 4:1 The fact that Nebuchadnezzar addressed what follows to everyone living on the earth, even though he did not rule over the entire earth, should not be a problem. This was the universal language that he customarily used (cf. 3:29). He did, in fact, rule over a very large portion of the ancient world. Likewise the benediction, "May your peace be great!" seems to be a typical salutation formula (cf. 6:25).
- 4:2 "Signs" and "miracles" are common biblical words used to describe supernatural occurrences (cf. Deut. 6:22; 7:19; 13:1, 2; 26:8; Neh. 9:10; Isa. 8:18; et al.). "Signs" (Aram. *'atohi*) refer to "natural phenomena that because of their magnitude or timing decisively evidence God's intervention."<sup>3</sup> "Miracles" (Aram. *timhohi*) are "supernatural manifestations of divine intervention in the course of nature."<sup>4</sup> "The Most High God" is clearly Yahweh (cf. 3:26).

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1341; Whitcomb, pp. 62-63.

<sup>2</sup>Tanner, p. 262. Cf. Job 33:14-18.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 59.

<sup>4</sup>Ibid.



- 4:3 The king had great respect for Yahweh, but that does not necessarily mean that he was a monotheist, much less a convert to Judaism. The king's praise of Yahweh opens and closes the chapter (cf. v. 37), forming an *inclusio* around the narrative.<sup>1</sup>

The effect on the reader of this introduction is to make us eager to discover what happened to Nebuchadnezzar. We now want to pay close attention to the testimony that follows.

## 2. The king's frustration over his second dream 4:4-9

- 4:4 As mentioned above, the time of this dream was apparently later in Nebuchadnezzar's reign. Historians have identified a seven-year period during his reign when he engaged in no military activity (ca. 582-575 B.C.).<sup>2</sup> This may be the seven years during which he was temporarily insane. If so, he may have had this dream in 583 or 582 B.C. If this is the approximate date, Nebuchadnezzar would have defeated the Egyptians under Pharaoh Hophra (in 588-587 B.C.) and would have destroyed Jerusalem (in 586 B.C.) before he had this dream. In any case, he was at ease and resting in his palace when God gave him this revelation.

Nebuchadnezzar described himself as flourishing in his palace in terms that, in the original language, picture him flourishing like a green plant. This king built the famous Hanging Gardens of Babylon, which enriched his naturally arid capital with luxuriant foliage. His description of himself here anticipates the figure of the tree in his dream, which represented him.

- 4:5-7 His dream, which was also a revelation from God, terrified him, as the original language makes clear (cf. 2:1, 3). He still believed in his wise men even though they had let him down previously (2:10-12). This time he told them his dream and

---

<sup>1</sup>An *inclusio* (Latin) is a literary device in which the writer creates a conceptual frame by placing similar material at the beginning and end of a section.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," pp. 59-60.

simply asked them to interpret it. They failed again, so he called in his expert in these matters: Daniel.

"This school of pompous quacks should long since have been dismissed."<sup>1</sup>

4:8 Daniel may not have been with the king's other advisers because he occupied a position in the government that required his presence elsewhere. The king described Daniel by using both his Hebrew and Babylonian names. This would have had the double effect of causing those who read this decree to recognize Daniel by his common Babylonian name and to honor Daniel's God (cf. v. 37).

Nebuchadnezzar probably meant that "a spirit of the holy gods" (cf. v. 17), in a pagan sense, indwelt Daniel, since he used a plural adjective (translated "holy") to describe the noun ("gods").<sup>2</sup> However, we should probably not be dogmatic on this point, since "holy" can mean divine rather than morally pure.<sup>3</sup> In this case the king may have meant "the Spirit of the holy God."

The true interpretation lies buried in the theological understanding of Nebuchadnezzar, which the text leaves unclear. I suspect that Nebuchadnezzar was speaking as a polytheist rather than as a monotheistic believer in Yahweh.

"Seeing that Nebuchadnezzar recognized another as 'my god,' it is doubtful if he regarded Jehovah as the only holy God."<sup>4</sup>

"Several questions are called forth by this vs. Why did Dan. appear only after the wise men had failed to interpret the dream? Why, if Dan. was so well known for his ability to interpret dreams, and if he

---

<sup>1</sup>Culver, "Daniel," p. 783.

<sup>2</sup>See Leupold, p. 176; Driver, p. 48.

<sup>3</sup>Young, p. 99.

<sup>4</sup>Culver, "Daniel," p. 783.

occupied a position of prominence over the wise men, was he not summoned first of all? ...

"The king ... had not forgotten Dan. Rather, his dream apparently caused him to realize that he would suffer humiliation, and probably this humiliation would be at the hands of Dan.'s God ... With this God, Neb., as yet, wanted no dealings. If others can interpret the dream, he will go to them rather than to Dan."<sup>1</sup>

- 4:9 Nebuchadnezzar addressed Daniel as the chief of the magicians (or scholars). By this he probably meant that Daniel was his chief interpreter of the future, not that he was the head of a group of illusionists.<sup>2</sup> Daniel's fame in this regard had evidently become well known (cf. Ezek. 28:3).

### **3. Nebuchadnezzar's account of his dream 4:10-18**

- 4:10-12 The king described what he had seen in poetic language. His words therefore appear as a prophetic oracle. The ancients frequently used trees to describe rulers of nations (cf. Isa. 2:12-13; 10:34; Ezek. 31:3-17).<sup>3</sup> Thus Nebuchadnezzar may have anticipated that the tree in his dream represented himself. What happened to the tree in his dream then could account for his fear (v. 5). This tree was similar to Nebuchadnezzar and his kingdom.<sup>4</sup> The beasts and birds probably represent the many types of people who benefited from Nebuchadnezzar's reign (cf. Ezek. 31:6; Matt. 13:32).
- 4:13-14 The "angelic watcher" who descended from heaven was probably a divine agent, an angel, though Nebuchadnezzar described it using terminology from his background (cf. v.

---

<sup>1</sup>Young, p. 100.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, p. 178.

<sup>3</sup>Young, pp. 101-2.

<sup>4</sup>See Paul Ferguson, "Nebuchadnezzar, Gilgamesh, and the 'Babylonian Job,'" *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 37:3 (September 1994):321-31.

17).<sup>1</sup> Earthly kings had watchmen who served as their eyes and ears and who carried out the bidding of their lords.

4:15 The binding of the stump hints at a restoration of the tree's life and its growth after being cut down. After all, the stump could have been removed. The significance of the iron and bronze band that bound the stump is obscure. It kept the tree stump from disintegrating, and perhaps it symbolized the madness that would bind Nebuchadnezzar,<sup>2</sup> or the fact that he would be protected while demented.<sup>3</sup> Another view is that it represents the king's malady that kept him bound.<sup>4</sup> As the description proceeds, it becomes increasingly clear that the tree represents a man. "It" now becomes "him."

4:16 The man, portrayed as a tree cut down, would be out of his "mind" (*lebab*, lit. heart, including feelings, emotions, and volition) for seven periods of time (cf. vv. 23, 25, 32; 7:25). The Aramaic word translated "periods of time" (*'iddanin*) is indefinite; it does not indicate how long these periods of time are.<sup>5</sup> It means years in 7:25, and that may be the meaning here too.<sup>6</sup> Seven hours, seven days, or seven weeks would have been too short a time for Nebuchadnezzar's hair to grow the length of feathers (v. 33), though that might be possible in seven months. Leupold believed that the number seven is not to be taken literally but simply marks a divine activity.<sup>7</sup> While the number seven is often connected with divine activity in Scripture, the text here specifies "seven *periods of time*."

4:17 God also revealed the purpose of the judgment of this "tree." It was to teach all people that the Most High God (cf. 3:26) is sovereign over all the affairs of humankind (v. 17; cf. vv. 25, 32; 2:21; 1 Sam. 2:7-8; Job 5:11). He can, has, and will set up

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 150; Goldingay, p. 88.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, p. 103.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 64.

<sup>4</sup>Leupold, p. 184.

<sup>5</sup>Keil, p. 153.

<sup>6</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1342.

<sup>7</sup>Leupold, p. 185.

whom He will, even people of humble origin, to rule nations (e.g., Joseph, Israel's judges, Saul, David, et al.).

"This concept also applies to democracies. God alone determines who is elected."<sup>1</sup>

God does not need the mighty to do His work. Therefore it is foolish to become proud over one's accomplishments and importance, as Nebuchadnezzar was.

God had sought to impress His universal sovereignty on Nebuchadnezzar previously (chs. 2 and 3), but the king had not learned his lesson. So Yahweh sent him a stronger lesson. This is often what He does (cf. Job 33:14-17). The last part of this verse is really a summary of the theme of the Book of Daniel, and some regard it as its key verse.<sup>2</sup>

4:18 The king concluded his description of what his dream contained by appealing to Daniel to interpret it for him. It seems incredible that the Babylonian soothsayers could not offer an interpretation of this dream, since its meaning seems quite clear. Perhaps God hid the meaning from them, or maybe they pretended ignorance of it since it predicted Nebuchadnezzar's humiliation, and they would not have wanted to tell him about that.

#### **4. Daniel's interpretation 4:19-27**

4:19 Daniel's initial reluctance to tell the king the interpretation must have been due to the bad news itself, and/or to the potentially harmful consequences to Daniel for telling it to the king. The AV translation "for one hour" (v. 19) describes a brief period of time better rendered "for a while" (NASB, et al.). Daniel had not hesitated to interpret the king's first dream (2:27-28). Sensing Daniel's uneasiness, Nebuchadnezzar encouraged the prophet to relate the interpretation without

---

<sup>1</sup>Fruchtenbaum, p. 155.

<sup>2</sup>E.g., Hanna, p. 399.

fear of punishment. This verse reflects the respect that each man held for the other.

"This verse reveals the heart of Daniel as well as any in the entire book of Daniel. He knew the meaning of this dream and how well Nebuchadnezzar deserved what was to come upon him. Nevertheless, Daniel's heart was concerned for the king and grieved over what he had to tell him. This was the distinctive feature of the true prophets of God: though they often had to predict judgments, they were nevertheless grieved when any of God's creatures were chastised."<sup>1</sup>

4:20-22 By repeating the facts of the dream as Nebuchadnezzar had previously narrated them, Daniel assured the king that he understood the dream exactly and was therefore interpreting it accurately. He identified the tree as representing Nebuchadnezzar.

4:23 Nebuchadnezzar would have to leave his present place in society and would live in the open air with animals of the field. Moreover, he would behave like an animal himself—even eating grass. Zoanthropy is a form of mental illness that causes such behavior. A person who has it imagines himself or herself to be an animal. Perhaps this is what God used to afflict Nebuchadnezzar.<sup>2</sup>

Another possibility is that the king suffered from boanthropy. With this illness a person thinks himself or herself to be an ox (cf. 5:21). His or her outer behavior is irrational, but the inner consciousness remains virtually unchanged.<sup>3</sup> This may account for the statement that, at the end of his affliction, Nebuchadnezzar raised his eyes toward heaven (i.e., repented, v. 34).

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, p. 56.

<sup>2</sup>Keil, p. 159; Pentecost, "Daniel," pp. 1342-43.

<sup>3</sup>Young, p. 112; Archer, "Daniel," p. 66.

R. K. Harrison recorded his personal observation of a mental patient with boanthropy who demonstrated exactly the symptoms described of Nebuchadnezzar.<sup>1</sup> Joyce Baldwin quoted a consulting psychiatrist who witnessed a similar case.<sup>2</sup>

4:24-25 The king's condition, whatever it was, would continue for seven periods of time (cf. v. 16), until the king had learned that the Most High is sovereign. The number seven in Scripture is often connected with a perfect work of God, and here it suggests that God's judgment on Nebuchadnezzar would be perfect and complete.

4:26 Then Nebuchadnezzar would receive back both his senses and his throne. "Heaven that rules" is a figure of speech (metonymy) for God that rules, since God lives in heaven.<sup>3</sup> The Jews often substituted "heaven" for God's name out of respect for Him. This is most obvious in Matthew's Gospel, which was written primarily for Jews, in which the "kingdom of heaven" usually replaces the more common "kingdom of God" in the other Gospels. However, this is the only place in the Old Testament where the substitution of "heaven" for "God" occurs.

4:27 Daniel concluded with a bold exhortation for the king. What God had revealed would happen unless Nebuchadnezzar turned from his sins, practiced righteousness, and showed mercy to the poor. Clearly Nebuchadnezzar ruled with a heavy hand as well as a proud heart.

"This points out the principle that any announced judgment may be averted if there is repentance (cf. the Book of Jonah)."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>R. K. Harrison, *Introduction to the Old Testament*, pp. 1116-17.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, pp. 109-10.

<sup>3</sup>Metonymy is a figure of speech in which the name of one thing is used in place of another thing associated with or suggested by it.

<sup>4</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1343. Cf. Jer. 18:7-10.

### **5. The fulfillment of threatened discipline 4:28-33**

4:28 This verse introduces the fulfillment of what God had warned Nebuchadnezzar that he could expect if he failed to repent.

4:29-30 Perhaps he humbled himself initially, but after 12 months he became as proud as ever. Archaeologists have discovered ancient documents in which Nebuchadnezzar boasted of the glory and splendor of Babylon, in addition to what Daniel recorded here.<sup>1</sup>

"The palace from which he surveyed Babylon was one of the citadels on the north side of the city. It had large courts, reception rooms, throne room, residences, and the famous hanging gardens, a vaulted, terraced structure with an elaborate water supply for its trees and plants, apparently built by Nebuchadnezzar for his Median queen. From the palace he would see in the distance the city's 27km outer double wall, which he had built. His palace stood just inside the double wall of the inner city, which was punctuated by eight gates and encircled an area 3km by 1km, with the Euphrates running through it. The palace adjoined a processional avenue that Nebuchadnezzar had paved with limestone and decorated with lion figures, emblematic of Ishtar; this avenue entered the city through the Ishtar Gate, which he had decorated with dragons and bulls (emblems of Marduk and Bel). It continued south through the city to the most important sacred precincts, to whose beautifying and development Nebuchadnezzar had contributed, the ziggurat [a rectangular stepped tower] crowned by a temple of Marduk where the god's statue resided. In Marduk's temple there were also shrines to other gods, and in the city elsewhere temples of other

---

<sup>1</sup>See Montgomery, pp. 243-44; Archer, "Daniel," p. 65; Joseph P. Free, *Archaeology and Bible History*, p. 228.



Babylonian gods, restored or beautified by Nebuchadnezzar."<sup>1</sup>

Josephus quoted the ancient writer Berosus who in his *Chaldaic History* gave a description of Nebuchadnezzar's building activities.<sup>2</sup>

"The discovery of the cuneiform inscriptions has remarkably confirmed the accuracy of this vs [v. 30]. From these we learn that Neb. was primarily, not a warrior, but a builder."<sup>3</sup>

4:31-32 No sooner had the king articulated his pride than he heard a voice from heaven pronouncing the punishment that Daniel had warned might come upon him.

"If there's one message that is emphasized in the Book of Daniel it's that 'the Most High rules in the kingdom of men' (Dan. 4:32, NKJV)."<sup>4</sup>

The phrase "the Most High is ruler over the realm of mankind" appears three times in this chapter (vv. 17, 25, 32) and articulates the theme of the Book of Daniel.

4:33 Immediately something snapped in his mind, and he became like an animal (cf. Ps. 49:20). Hair "like eagles' feathers" pictures hair that is neglected and matted, as well as long. He did not think to trim his fingernails and toenails, either.

God's judgment is a sobering reminder that we are all but a breath or a heartbeat from insanity, or death, but for His mercy (cf. Luke 12:16-20). It is He who sustains us moment by moment (John 15:5; Col. 1:17). The humbling of proud rulers is a common theme in Scripture (cf. Deut. 17:14-20; Ps. 92; Prov. 16:5-7, 12; Isa. 10:5—11:10; 14:4-23; Ezek. 17:23-24; 19:10-14; 28; 31:5-6, 12-13; Acts 12:23).

---

<sup>1</sup>Goldingay, pp. 89-90.

<sup>2</sup>Josephus, 10:11:1. See also Whitcomb, pp. 65-66; and Campbell, p. 50, for additional descriptions.

<sup>3</sup>Young, p. 109.

<sup>4</sup>Wiersbe, p. 282. NKJV refers to *The Holy Bible: New King James Version*.

"What he should have learned from his vision of the great image and from the deliverance of the three Hebrews from the fiery furnace would [now] be indelibly impressed on him."<sup>1</sup>

"Perhaps one should say that the true insanity belongs to the Nebuchadnezzar who has earlier been talking as if he were the eternal king and God did not exist. His outward madness is the external expression of a delusion he has already been the tragic victim of. Only a madman thinks he is a king or an emperor (Pascal): politics is the house rules of a lunatic asylum. But those rules are important, because they make the madness as little harmful as possible."<sup>2</sup>

One wonders what role Daniel might have played in protecting the king, and encouraging the other royal officials to expect and plan for Nebuchadnezzar's restoration. It would not have been abnormal for Nebuchadnezzar's enemies in Babylon to kill him and take his place. The fact that this did not happen during the time of the king's breakdown is another tribute to God's sovereignty. He kept affairs under control, so that when Nebuchadnezzar recovered, he could continue to rule.<sup>3</sup>

## **6. Nebuchadnezzar's restoration 4:34-37**

4:34-35 The narrative resumes in the first person, adding the force of personal testimony to the story that the king had been telling. "Raised my eyes toward heaven" implies that Nebuchadnezzar finally came to the end of himself—and sought divine help from Yahweh.

"Sanity begins with a realistic self-appraisal."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 66.

<sup>2</sup>Goldingay, p. 96.

<sup>3</sup>For extrabiblical support for Nebuchadnezzar's temporary madness, see *ibid.*, pp. 83-84; Young, pp. 110-11; or Fruchtenbaum, pp. 164-67.

<sup>4</sup>Baldwin, p. 116.

"The ability to recognize God is the fundamental difference between beasts and men. In any age, the glory of man is to recognize God and to take his place relative to the Sovereign of the universe."<sup>1</sup>

"Nothing is more insane than human pride. Nothing is more sober and sensible than to praise God."<sup>2</sup>

The king described Yahweh in the most glorifying terms in these verses.

"The universal kingdom [of God] always exists efficaciously [i.e., successfully producing its intended result] regardless of the attitude of its subjects [cf. Ps. 103:19]."<sup>3</sup>

It is difficult to prove conclusively from the text that the monarch placed saving faith in Yahweh, but that is a distinct possibility in view of his words and his accompanying praise.<sup>4</sup> Some interpreters held that Nebuchadnezzar did not become a believer in Yahweh in a saving sense.<sup>5</sup> Only God knows for sure.

"In chapter 4 Nebuchadnezzar reaches a new spiritual perspicacity. Prior to his experience of insanity, his confessions were those of a pagan whose polytheism permitted the addition of new gods, as illustrated in Daniel 2:47 and 3:28-29. Now Nebuchadnezzar apparently worships the King of heaven only. For this reason, his autobiography is truly remarkable and reflects the fruitfulness of Daniel's influence upon him and probably of Daniel's daily prayers for him.

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, p. 58.

<sup>2</sup>Culver, "Daniel," p. 785.

<sup>3</sup>Alva J. McClain, *The Greatness of the Kingdom*, p. 30.

<sup>4</sup>Young, pp. 113-14; Dennett, p. 50; Walvoord, p. 112; Whitcomb, pp. 68-69; Campbell, pp. 53-54; Ironside, p. 60.

<sup>5</sup>E.g., Leupold, p. 204, Archer, "Daniel," p. 58, Baldwin, p. 116.

Certainly God is no respecter of persons and can save the high and mighty in this world as well as the lowly."<sup>1</sup>

What we can say certainly is that Nebuchadnezzar moved from acknowledging the sovereignty of no one but himself to acknowledging the true God's sovereignty over him.

4:36-37 Even as Nebuchadnezzar acknowledged God's sovereignty, endless existence, and rule—and His irresistible will and power—his sanity returned to him. The king's public confession of inferiority to God shows the genuineness of his repentance, as does God's greater subsequent blessing of him (cf. Job).

"No other instance in the cuneiform inscriptions occurs of a king recording his own inaction."<sup>2</sup>

"This tremendously important principle had to be established in the minds of the captive Jews, serving out their years of bondage in Babylonia. ... The captive Jews needed to know that even the apparently limitless power of Nebuchadnezzar was under the control of the Lord God Almighty, who still cared for them and had a great future for them in their land. Therefore, each episode recorded in the first six chapters concludes with a triumphant demonstration of God's sovereignty and faithfulness and his ability to crush the pride of unconverted mankind."<sup>3</sup>

"There seems to be prophetic significance in this incident as well as in the one in chapter 3. Even though God has appointed Gentiles to a place of prominence in His program during the times of the Gentiles, yet most nations and people walk in rebellion against God. ... God's judgment on Nebuchadnezzar, designed to subject him to God's authority, seems to prefigure

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 112.

<sup>2</sup>Jamieson, et al., p. 742.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," pp. 67-68.

God's judgment on the nations to subject them to the authority of the One who has been given the right to rule."<sup>1</sup>

#### D. BELSHAZZAR'S FEAST CH. 5

Belshazzar came to power some nine years after Nebuchadnezzar died.<sup>2</sup> The events of this chapter, therefore, occurred about 66 years after those in chapter 1, and about 36 years after those in chapter 4. Daniel received the revelation in chapter 7 in the first year of Belshazzar (553 B.C., 7:1), and the revelation in chapter 8 in Belshazzar's third year (551 B.C., 8:1). Thus chapter 5 follows chapters 7 and 8 chronologically by 14 and 12 years respectively. Daniel would now have been in his 80s. The chapters in Daniel in their chronological order are as follows: 1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 8, 5, 9, 6, 10, 11, 12.

"... a still worse moral feature of Gentile sovereignty is exhibited [in this chapter]. Idolatry and pride of power—vainglory—had marked Nebuchadnezzar; but Belshazzar is distinguished by the public insolence of daring impiety, venting itself in open wickedness and profanity."<sup>3</sup>

#### 1. Belshazzar's dishonoring of Yahweh 5:1-4

5:1 Some older critical scholars claimed that Belshazzar was never a king of the Neo-Babylonian Empire.<sup>4</sup> However, modern discoveries have shown that Belshazzar acted as king during his father's frequent and prolonged absences from Babylon.<sup>5</sup>

"The last actual Chaldean king, Nabonidus, 'entrusted the kingship' in 539 B.C. to his son Bel-sar-usur during his ten-year absence from

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1344.

<sup>2</sup>For a brief history of the Neo-Babylonian Empire between Nebuchadnezzar's and Belshazzar's reigns, see Archer, "Daniel," pp. 69-70.

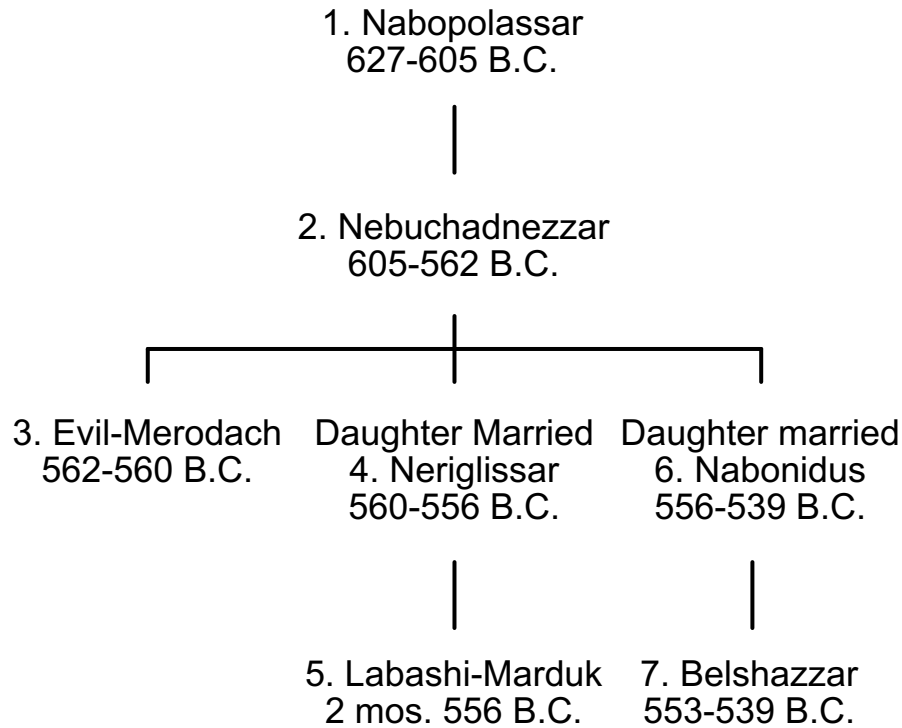
<sup>3</sup>Dennett, p. 67. See also Leupold, p. 208.

<sup>4</sup>E.g., H. H. Rowley, "The Historicity of the Fifth Chapter of Daniel," *Journal of Theological Studies* 32 (October 1930):12.

<sup>5</sup>See A. T. Olmstead, *History of the Persian Empire*, pp. 37, 38; Jamieson, et al., 730; Free, pp. 233-35; Fruchtenbaum, pp. 171-72. See Olmstead, p. 87, for the same custom in Persia.

Babylon, returning as the threat from Cyrus grew."<sup>1</sup>

### Kings of the Neo-Babylonian Empire



Banquets the size described in this verse also have drawn the attack of critics. Yet the ancient historian Ktesias wrote that Persian kings frequently dined daily with 15,000 people (cf. Esth. 1).<sup>2</sup>

Later we shall read that Belshazzar hosted this banquet on the night that the city of Babylon fell (vv. 30-31). The invading Medes and Persians, led by Ugbaru, commander of the Persian army, would have already taken the surrounding countryside, and everyone in the city would have known of their intentions.

<sup>1</sup>Goldingay, p. 106. See also Finegan, *Light from ...*, pp. 227-28; N. W. Porteous, *Daniel: A Commentary*, p. 76; Young, pp. 115-19; Keil, pp. 162-79, 222; Leupold, pp. 208-12; Whitcomb, pp. 70-72.

<sup>2</sup>See Leupold, pp. 214.

However, the city of Babylon had not fallen to an invading army for 1,000 years because of its strong fortifications.

"Situated on a vast plain, it [Babylon] is shaped like a square measuring thirteen and a half miles on each side, with a perimeter of about 55 miles; that is how large the urban area of Babylon is. And it is designed like no other city known to us. First, a deep, wide moat full of water surrounds it and forms its outer boundary. Next there is a wall 76 feet in width, 304 feet in height. ... Along the top edge of the wall, they built one-story chambers facing each other, leaving a space about the size of a passageway for a four-horse chariot between each. Around the wall they installed 100 gates all of bronze, including the pillars and the lintels. ... The city has two districts, for the River Euphrates divides it in half through the middle. This river is large, deep, and swift."<sup>1</sup>

Belshazzar's confidence in the security of his capital is evident in his banqueting and getting drunk while his enemy was at his door. His name, which means "Bel [also known as Marduk] Has Protected the King,"<sup>2</sup> may have increased his sense of invulnerability. Herodotus also mentioned that a festival was underway in Babylon when the city fell.<sup>3</sup>

"With the armies of a conqueror pressing at the capital this deputy ruler took refuge in an orgy of wine."<sup>4</sup>

5:2      Nebuchadnezzar was Belshazzar's grandfather rather than his "father," but the original language commonly used "father" in the sense of ancestor.

"Neither in Hebrew, nor in Chaldee, is there any word for 'grandfather,' 'grandson.' Forefathers

---

<sup>1</sup>Herodotus, 1.178-80.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1344.

<sup>3</sup>Herodotus, 1.191.

<sup>4</sup>Baldwin, p. 119.

are called 'fathers' or 'fathers' fathers.' But a single grandfather, or forefather, is never called 'father's father' but always 'father' only."<sup>1</sup>

"The presence of the king's 'wives' and 'concubines' was usually not tolerated at banquets. It was, however, permitted when degeneracy began to run rampant."<sup>2</sup>

5:3 Evidently the vessels that had been taken from the Jerusalem temple had been stored as trophies of war and not used previously (cf. 1:2).<sup>3</sup> Their presence in the warehouses of Babylon was sufficient humiliation of Yahweh who, in the minds of the Babylonians, was not able not prevent their capture.

5:4 However, using these vessels in praise of Babylon's gods was even more sacrilegious than just possessing them.

The description of Babylon's gods as gold, silver, bronze, iron, wood, and stone probably reflects the Hebrew perspective of the writer (cf. v. 23). For the Israelites, the gods that Belshazzar honored were no gods at all.

"... this was plainly an act of open defiance, calculated to insult the God whose Temple had stood in Jerusalem."<sup>4</sup>

"Profanation of cult vessels was an outrage even by pagan standards."<sup>5</sup>

"Have you noticed how in recent years the world has stepped into the 'sanctuary' of faith and laid its ruthless hands on some of the things we hold most sacred? Our day has seen this impious sacrilege carried into many other realms, as well.

---

<sup>1</sup>Pusey, p. 346.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, p. 216. Cf. Esth. 1:10-12.

<sup>3</sup>See Greg Goswell, "The Temple Theme in the Book of Daniel," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 55:3 (September 2012):509-20.

<sup>4</sup>Leupold, p. 215.

<sup>5</sup>Collins, p. 245.



Is God unmindful of this? Will He not visit for such defiance?"<sup>1</sup>

Again, as in chapters 3 and 4, a pagan king set himself up as superior to Yahweh. Perhaps Belshazzar did what he did in order to strengthen nationalistic pride among the Babylonians as well.

## **2. God's revelation to Belshazzar 5:5-9**

5:5 Like Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar received an omen (an event regarded as a sign of coming good or evil) from God. In Nebuchadnezzar's case the omen were two dreams (chs. 1 and 4). In Belshazzar's case the omen was handwriting on a wall. The night of revelry became a night of revelation.<sup>2</sup>

"In the ruins of Nebuchadnezzar's palace archeologists have uncovered a large throne room 56 feet wide and 173 feet long which probably was the scene of this banquet. Midway in the long wall opposite the entrance there was a niche in front of which the king may well have been seated. Interestingly, the wall behind the niche was covered with white plaster as described by Daniel, which would make an excellent background for such a writing."<sup>3</sup>

5:6 The sight of the writing on the wall completely unnerved Belshazzar. His fear may have been compounded by his drunken condition, if he was drunk.

5:7 The "sorcerers" that Belshazzar called to help him understand the mysterious writing were magicians. These "Chaldeans" were scholars who knew the lore of the Babylonians. The "diviners" were astrologers. These were only three of the many groups of wise men that the king summoned (v. 8).

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, pp. 65-66.

<sup>2</sup>Campbell, p. 59.

<sup>3</sup>Walvoord, p. 120. Cf. Montgomery, p. 253; Kraeling, p. 327; Leupold, p. 219; Young, p. 120.

Clothing someone in purple meant giving him royal authority (cf. Esth. 8:15). The necklace of gold would have had symbolic as well as monetary value. Belshazzar evidently offered to promote anyone who could interpret the mysterious writing to third ruler of the kingdom because he himself was the second ruler, under his father, Nabonidus. Thus this was the highest official reward that he could offer.

5:8 The language in which the mysterious writing appeared remains unknown.<sup>1</sup> The writer either recorded it exactly, if it was Aramaic, or translated it into the Aramaic language. The wise men's difficulty in understanding it may have been due to its interpretation, rather than just the meaning of the words (cf. vv. 14-16, 25).

5:9 The fact that none of his wise men could interpret what was written alarmed Belshazzar even more, and it puzzled his nobles.

### **3. The queen's counsel 5:10-12**

5:10 Normally we would identify the queen as Belshazzar's wife. However, there are a number of reasons to prefer the view that she was really the queen mother. She could even have been the surviving wife of Nebuchadnezzar.<sup>2</sup> Belshazzar's wives and concubines had been participating in this banquet (v. 2), but this woman now entered it, apparently for the first time. She also spoke to the king more as a mother than as a wife.<sup>3</sup> Moreover, she spoke as one who had personal acquaintance with Daniel's earlier interpretation of Nebuchadnezzar's second dream (cf. 4:8, 9, 18).

Probably this queen mother was Belshazzar's mother, who was also the daughter of Nebuchadnezzar.<sup>4</sup> The queen mother was often a significant figure who exerted considerable influence in

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 222.

<sup>2</sup>Young, p. 122; Leupold, pp. 224-25.

<sup>3</sup>Arthur Jeffery, "The Book of Daniel, Introduction and Exegesis," in *The Interpreter's Bible*, 6:426.

<sup>4</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 72.

ancient courts (cf. 1 Kings 15:13; 2 Kings 11:1-3; 24:12; Jer. 13:18). This woman proceeded to do for Belshazzar what Arioch had done for Nebuchadnezzar, namely, to bring Daniel to the king's attention (cf. 2:25).

5:11-12 As before, Daniel had not accompanied the other wise men whom the king had summoned (cf. 4:6-8). The reason for this is unclear, but the effect in the event, and in the narrative, is that it sets Daniel off as unique. Clearly, Belshazzar did not know Daniel personally. Perhaps Daniel had left public service by this time (cf. Joseph, Exod. 1:8).

"It will hardly seem strange to note that Daniel had not appeared before this time if it is remembered that with the coming of a new king, especially when usurpers arose, wholesale dismissal of the men in office was the rule. Daniel may have been demoted even before Belshazzar appeared on the scene."<sup>1</sup>

When really severe crises arise, it is often the man or woman of God that others turn to for answers.

#### **4. Belshazzar's request of Daniel 5:13-16**

The king had heard of Daniel by reputation (v. 16), even though he had not met him. He described him as a person whose extraordinary ability came from some divine source (v. 14; cf. 4:8, 18). Perhaps it was because Daniel was a Jew that Belshazzar did not know him. However now the king was quite willing to give even this Jewish exile all the honors that he had formerly promised his wise men.

Here was Daniel, a worshipper of the God whom Belshazzar had been dishonoring in his banquet, who, ironically, on this night of all nights, might prove superior to the Chaldeans in deciphering the mysterious writing. The king's willingness to reward a Jewish exile shows how desperately Belshazzar wanted to learn the meaning of the puzzling message on the wall.

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 226.

"As in the previous instances in Daniel 2 and 4, the wisdom of the world is demonstrated to be totally unable to solve its major problems and to understand either the present or the future. Daniel as the prophet of God is the channel through which divine revelation would come, and Belshazzar in his extremity was willing to listen. Too often the world, like Belshazzar, is not willing to seek the wisdom of God until its own bankruptcy becomes evident. Then help is sought too late, as in the case of Belshazzar, and the cumulative sin and unbelief which precipitated the crisis in the first place becomes the occasion of downfall."<sup>1</sup>

### **5. Daniel's rebuke of Belshazzar 5:17-24**

- 5:17 Daniel's reply to the king was in every sense a sermon, and a powerful one at that.<sup>2</sup> The prophet began by declining the offered gifts. This had the effect, whatever Daniel's reason for doing so may have been, of helping Belshazzar realize that these gifts did not influence his interpretation of the writing.
- 5:18-21 Daniel reminded Belshazzar, and undoubtedly everyone else in the room, of the lesson in humility that God had taught the king's forefather, Nebuchadnezzar (ch. 4). The Most High God had given his grandfather his authority, and had taught him that he was under His greater sovereignty. Nebuchadnezzar's pride had led him to behave arrogantly, like Belshazzar was doing by drinking from the sacred vessels of Yahweh, the Most High God.
- 5:22-23 Even though Belshazzar knew all about Nebuchadnezzar's pride and humiliation, he had not humbled his heart before "the Lord of heaven" and glorified Him. Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah used the title "the Lord (or God) of heaven" to describe Yahweh because this was the title of the chief Syrian god and a title that other people in the Persian Empire gave to their chief god (c. Ezra 1:2; 5:11-12; 6:9-10; 7:12, 23; Neh. 1:4-5;

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 124. Paragraph division omitted.

<sup>2</sup>King, p. 148.

2:4, 20; Dan. 2:18-19, 34, 44; 5:23). This title implies God's transcendence over all.<sup>1</sup>

"One of the most amazing spectacles in this world is how little men really profit from the judgments of God."<sup>2</sup>

5:24 Therefore this same God, who held Belshazzar's life and his ways in His "hand," had sent the "hand" to write the inscription on the wall. Nebuchadnezzar had heard a voice from heaven while he was outdoors (4:31), but Belshazzar saw a hand from heaven indoors. Both forms of revelation have been extremely rare throughout history, but these occasions in the Book of Daniel involved leaders of the greatest nation on earth.

#### **6. Daniel's interpretation of the writing 5:25-28**

5:25 Scholars have wearied themselves trying to figure out how Daniel got his interpretation from these three apparently Aramaic words. Their explanations have been as diverse as those of Belshazzar's wise men probably were. It seems best to simply take Daniel's interpretation at face value. It has been said that Daniel could interpret these words because he recognized his Father's handwriting.<sup>3</sup>

5:26 This much seems clear: The words all referred to measures of weight.<sup>4</sup> Daniel interpreted the consonants by, in effect, adding vowels, which are absent in Aramaic, as in Hebrew, and made each word a passive participle. The Aramaic word *mene* means "mena," or with different vowels, *menah*, "numbered." Daniel understood this word to signify that the number of years that God had prescribed for the Neo-Babylonian Empire had expired. Its repetition probably stressed the certainty of this point. Joseph had told Pharaoh: "Now as for the repeating of the dream to Pharaoh twice, it means that the matter is

---

<sup>1</sup>Waltke, *An Old ...*, p. 375.

<sup>2</sup>Feinberg, p. 69.

<sup>3</sup>Campbell, p. 64.

<sup>4</sup>Goldingay, pp. 110-11; Baldwin, pp. 123-24.

confirmed by God, and God will quickly bring it about" (Gen. 41:32).

- 5:27     *Tekel* (cognate with the Hebrew "shekel"), when changed to *tekal*, means "weighed." God had weighed Belshazzar and had found him deficient; he was not the ruler that he should have been because of his flagrant refusal to acknowledge the Most High God's sovereignty (v. 22).
- 5:28     *Uparsin* means "and half-shekels," and *peras* means "broken in two," or "divided," and relates to the division of Belshazzar's kingdom into two parts: one part for the Medes, and the other for the Persians. However, *paras* means "Persia." Persia was the dominant kingdom in the Medo-Persian alliance. Thus *prs* had a triple meaning. The meaning of these words describing various weights would have been unintelligible to the Chaldean wise men. Even if they had supplied the vowels that Daniel did, and came up with the words "numbered," "weighed," and "divided"—they would have been meaningless without a context.<sup>1</sup>

"The important consequence of this identification of the combined Medo-Persian Empire as the second kingdom in Daniel's series of four (embodied in Nebuchadnezzar's four-part dream-image in ch. 2) is that the third kingdom must be the Greek one; therefore, the fourth empire must be the Roman Empire—which, of course, did not actually take over the Near East till 63 B.C., a century after the Maccabean uprisings. Therefore, this handwriting on the wall demolishes the Maccabean date hypothesis, which insists that nothing in Daniel prophesies any event later than the death of Antiochus Epiphanes in 164 B.C., a hundred years before Pompey annexed Palestine-Syria to the Roman Empire."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>For Josephus' explanation, see 10:11:4.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 74.

"This sequence: 'Medes' first, then 'Persians,' indicates a point of historical accuracy that fits in beautifully with the idea of Daniel's authorship of the book. The supremacy in this dual kingdom remained but a short time with the Medes and that while Daniel was still on the scene, and then passed permanently to the Persians, a fine point that a writer who lived in the Maccabean age would hardly have thought of recording. Yet the form *upharsin*, 'Persians,' gives the emphasis to the much longer Persian supremacy."<sup>1</sup>

Ironically, as Daniel interpreted God's verdict against Babylon, the Medes and Persians were already pouring into the city.

"As God had judged Nebuchadnezzar's pride by removing him from the throne, so He would judge Belshazzar's pride by taking the kingdom from him and giving it to another people."<sup>2</sup>

## **7. Daniel's rise and Belshazzar's fall 5:29-31**

5:29 Belshazzar kept his promise (v. 16), though Daniel's honors only lasted a few hours at most, typical of the honors of this world. The king's response is surprising. We might have expected him to execute Daniel for confronting him publicly. Perhaps his response indicates that he was drunk or that he repented. If he repented, his repentance was too late to prevent judgment from falling.

"In its rise to power the Babylonian Empire had conquered Jerusalem, taken its inhabitants into captivity, looted its beautiful temple, and completely destroyed the city. Yet this empire was to have as its last official act the honoring of one of these captives who by divine revelation predicted not only the downfall of Babylon but the course of the times of the Gentiles until the Son

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 235.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1346.

of man should come from heaven. Man may have the first word, but God will have the last word."<sup>1</sup>

5:30 "That same night" was October 13, 539 B.C.<sup>2</sup> Belshazzar was killed that very night. The record of Nebuchadnezzar in Daniel is the story of an overbearing king who experienced temporary judgment, but the story of Belshazzar is one of a sacrilegious king who suffered permanent judgment. Xenophon also recorded Belshazzar's death. The night of revelry that had become a night of revelation now turned into a night of retribution.<sup>3</sup>

"Highly centralized in the reign of Nebuchadnezzar, Babylonia had progressively disintegrated under the weakling rule of Belshazzar."<sup>4</sup>

"Historically, Belshazzar perhaps fell because he could not handle a political crisis; but more profoundly, as Daniel sees it, he fell because of his irresponsibility before God ..."<sup>5</sup>

Herodotus, Xenophon, Berosus, the Babylonian Chronicles, and Cyrus (on the Cyrus Cylinder) all described the fall of Babylon, which occurred on the night that Belshazzar died, in writings that have remained to the present day.<sup>6</sup> Isaiah and Jeremiah had predicted Babylon's fall (Isa. 13:17-22; 21:1-10; 47:1-5; Jer. 51:33-58). According to the ancient secular writers, the Persians diverted the water from the Euphrates River that flowed south through Babylon into an ancient lake located to the north. This allowed them to walk into the city on the

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 129.

<sup>2</sup>Olmstead, p. 50.

<sup>3</sup>Campbell, p. 65.

<sup>4</sup>Olmstead, p. 45.

<sup>5</sup>Goldingay, p. 116. See also Finegan, *Light from ...*, pp. 229-30.

<sup>6</sup>See Goldingay, pp. 106-7; James B. Pritchard, ed., *Ancient Near Eastern Texts*, pp. 305-6, 315-16; D. W. Thomas, ed., *Documents from Old Testament Times*, pp. 81-83, 92-95; Flavius Josephus, *Against Apion*, 1:20; J. M. Cook, *The Persian Empire*, p. 31.



riverbed and scale the undefended walls that flanked the river.<sup>1</sup> Herodotus pictured Babylon's fall as follows:

"Posting the main part of his [Cyrus'] army at the location where the [Euphrates] river flows into the city, and another part of his army at the opposite end, where the river exits the city, he gave orders to the army that whenever they saw that the river had become fordable, they should enter the city via the riverbed. ... For he diverted the river through a channel into the lake basin, which had become a marsh, and thus made the river fordable as its waters subsided. When the Persians who were posted by the city saw the River Euphrates drop to about the level of mid thigh for a man, they entered Babylon according to Cyrus' plan."<sup>2</sup>

"The downfall of Babylon is in type the downfall of the unbelieving world [cf. Rev. 17—18]. In many respects, modern civilization is much like ancient Babylon, resplendent with its monuments of architectural triumph, as secure as human hands and ingenuity could make it, and yet defenseless against the judgment of God at the proper hour. Contemporary civilization is similar to ancient Babylon in that it has much to foster human pride but little to provide human security. Much as Babylon fell on the sixteenth day of Tishri (Oc. 11 or 12) 539 B.C., as indicated in the Nabonidus Chronicle, so the world will be overtaken by disaster when the day of the Lord comes (1 Th 5:1-3 [cf. Ps. 2:4-6; Rev. 19:15-16]). The disaster of the world, however, does not overtake the child of God; Daniel survives the purge and

---

<sup>1</sup>For a plan of the city, see any good Bible dictionary or encyclopedia, or Kraeling, p. 322.

<sup>2</sup>Herodotus, 1.191.

emerges triumphant as one of the presidents of the new kingdom in chapter 6."<sup>1</sup>

5:31 Darius the Mede became the ruler of Babylonia when Babylon fell (cf. 2:21).<sup>2</sup> The writer introduced Darius in 5:31, which is the first verse of chapter 6 in the Hebrew Bible, and he is the prominent king in chapter 6.

"The references to Darius the Mede in the book of Daniel have long been recognized as providing the most serious historical problem in the book."<sup>3</sup>

Critics, including Rowley, claim that history allows no room for a person by this name. At least two ancient historians, however, apart from the Book of Daniel and works that depended on it (e.g., Josephus), mentioned Darius.<sup>4</sup>

Archer suggested that "Darius" may have been a title of honor in the Persian Empire, as "Caesar" was in the Roman Empire—or, I might add, as "Pharaoh" was in Egypt.<sup>5</sup> If this was so, "Darius" could refer to another man known in history by another name or names. I think this is the case here.

One view is that Darius the Mede was Cyrus the Persian.<sup>6</sup> This might account for the fact that Daniel referred to Darius as "king" in chapter 6, assuming that the two Darius', in 5:31 and 6:1, were the same man. Furthermore, according to this view, it would have been very unusual for a subordinate of Cyrus to divide the whole empire into 120 satrapies (v. 1). Darius was probably called "the Mede" because he was of Median descent (9:1), according to this view.

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 131. For the Nabonidus Chronicle reference, see John C. Whitcomb, *Darius the Mede*, p. 73.

<sup>2</sup>See Finegan, *Light from ...*, pp. 233-34.

<sup>3</sup>H. H. Rowley, *Darius the Mede and the Four World Empires in the Book of Daniel*, p. 8.

<sup>4</sup>See Steven D. Anderson and Rodger C. Young, "The Remembrance of Daniel's Darius the Mede in Berossus and Harpocraton," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 173:691 (July-September 2016):315-23.

<sup>5</sup>Archer, "Daniel," pp. 18-19, 76.

<sup>6</sup>D. J. Wiseman, "Some Historical Problems in the Book of Daniel," in *Notes on Some Problems in the Book of Daniel*, pp. 12-14.

Another possibility is that Darius is another name for Gobryas (also called Gubaru), the commander who led Cyrus' assault against Babylon and became the ruler of Babylon under Cyrus.<sup>1</sup> I favor this view. Gobryas had been one of Nebuchadnezzar's outstanding generals, had been appointed governor of Gutium (the Babylonian name for Elam), had revolted against the Babylonians and became a follower of Cyrus, and with Cyrus' troops entered and took Babylon without a battle on October 13, 539.<sup>2</sup> According to 9:1, Gobryas (Darius) was the son of one Ahasuerus and was of Median descent. Perhaps his Median connections led him to side with the Persians against the Babylonians. It was not until October 29 that Cyrus himself entered Babylon.<sup>3</sup>

"In his dealings with his Babylonian subjects, Cyrus was 'king of Babylon, king of lands.' ... But it was Gobryas the satrap who represented the royal authority after the king's [i.e., Cyrus'] departure [from Babylon following its capture]."<sup>4</sup>

Ugbaru and Gubaru may be different spellings of the same man's (Gobryas') name.<sup>5</sup>

"But the syllable GU is written quite differently from UG in Akkadian cuneiform."<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Olmstead, p. 50; Robert Anderson, *The Coming Prince*, p. xv; Archer, "Daniel," pp. 76-77; Whitcomb, *Darius the ...*, p. 35; Robert Dick Wilson, *Studies in the Book of Daniel*, pp. 128-29; Leupold, pp. 238-42; *The Nelson ...*, p. 1429. Cf. Wood, *The Prophets ...*, p. 348. Young, p. 183, believed Darius was a viceroy under Cyrus.

<sup>2</sup>See Olmstead, pp. 45, 50.

<sup>3</sup>*Ibid.*, p. 50.

<sup>4</sup>*Ibid.*, p. 71.

<sup>5</sup>William H. Shea, "Darius the Mede: An Update," *Andrews University Seminary Studies* 20 (Autumn 1982):229-47. See also idem, "The Search for Darius the Mede (Concluded), or, The Time of the Answer to Daniel's Prayer and the Date of the Death of Darius the Mede," *Journal of the Adventist Theological Society* 12:1 (Spring 2001):97-105.

<sup>6</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 76.

A third view equates Darius the Mede with Cambyses, Cyrus' son, who ruled Persia from about 530 to 522 B.C.<sup>1</sup>

"Baltasar [Belshazzar], who by the Babylonians was called Naboandelus [Nabonidus]: against him did Cyrus, the king of Persia, and Darius, the king of Media, make war."<sup>2</sup>

A fourth view is that Darius the Mede was the throne name of Cyaxares II, whom the Greek historian Xenophon referred to.<sup>3</sup> However, Belshazzar was evidently Nabonidus' son, which throws into question what Josephus wrote, above, about Cyrus and Darius. Elsewhere Josephus referred to Darius and Cyrus as kinsmen.<sup>4</sup>

Darius the Mede was definitely not the same person as Darius the Great (Darius I, the son of Hystaspes) who was much younger and ruled Persia later, from 521 to 486 B.C., nor was he Darius II, who ruled even later than that.<sup>5</sup>

"It must be emphasized that there is no established fact which contradicts a person by the name of Darius the Mede reigning over Babylon if Darius is an alternate name for a known ruler."<sup>6</sup>

The "kingdom" that Darius received was the kingdom of Babylonia, which became one of the 127 provinces in the Persian Empire.

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, pp. 193-200; Charles Boutflower, *In and Around the Book of Daniel*, pp. 142-55; Tanner, p. 58. See *ibid.*, p. 357 for a chart of five views of the identity of Darius the Mede with supporters of each view.

<sup>2</sup>Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 10:11:2.

<sup>3</sup>See Rodger C. Young, "Xenophon's Cyaxares: Uncle of Cyrus, Friend of Daniel," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 64:2 (June 2021):265-85.

<sup>4</sup>*Ibid.*, 10:11:4.

<sup>5</sup>See the discussion of the problem in Longman and Dillard, pp. 377-81.

<sup>6</sup>Walvoord, p. 134.

PERSIAN KINGS DURING THE EXILIC AND POSTEXILIC PERIODS		
King	Reign	Scripture
Cyrus	559-530	Ezra 1:1; 4:5; Dan. 5:31—6:28; 9:1; 11:1
Cambyses	530-522	
Smerdis	522	
Darius I	521-486	Ezra 5—6; Haggai; Zechariah
Xerxes (Ahasuerus)	486-465	Ezra 4:6; Esther
Artaxerxes I (Artashasta)	465-424	Ezra 4:7-23; chs. 7—10; Nehemiah; Malachi
Darius II	423-404	Neh. 12:22

"This chapter illustrates the involvement of king and kingdom in one destiny. Belshazzar's blatant disrespect for the Most High God was all of a piece with the national character, indeed with our human condition, as it is depicted in Psalm 90. Though human days are numbered (verse 10), few number them for themselves and 'get a heart of wisdom' (verse 12). Belshazzar in this chapter presents a vivid picture of the fool, the practising [*sic*] atheist, who at the end can only brazen it out with the help of alcohol which blots out the stark reality."<sup>1</sup>

"The whole chapter is an instructive symbolic assessment of the perils and limits, the sources and responsibilities, of power in human affairs."<sup>2</sup>

Alexander Hislop claimed that "the Pope himself is truly and properly the lineal representative of Belshazzar."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Baldwin, p. 125.

<sup>2</sup>Paul Lehmann, *The Transfiguration of Politics*, p. 311, footnote.

<sup>3</sup>Alexander Hislop, *The Two Babylons*, p. 3.

**E. DARIUS' PRIDE AND DANIEL'S PRESERVATION CH. 6**

Even though this chapter is one of the most popular in all the Bible, it has also been the target of strong critical attacks, mainly because of the problem of the identity of Darius. The chapter shares motifs (themes) with Psalm 2 and recalls Daniel 3. The structure of the chapter is basically chiastic. It emphasizes God's deliverance of Daniel (vv. 16-23).<sup>1</sup>

- A Introduction: Daniel's success vv. 1-3
- B Darius signs an injunction and Daniel takes his stand vv. 4-10
  - C Daniel's colleagues plan his death vv. 11-15
    - D Darius hopes for Daniel's deliverance vv. 16-18
      - D' Darius witnesses Daniel's deliverance vv. 19-23
    - C' Daniel's colleagues meet their death v. 24
  - B' Darius signs a decree and takes his stand vv. 25-27
- A' Conclusion: Daniel's success v. 28

Goldingay's apt title for this chapter is "God Vindicates His Power When Daniel Chooses the Lion Pit rather than Apostasy."<sup>2</sup>

"The iniquity of world rulers during the 'times of the Gentiles' has not yet been examined to the last detail. These monarchs have sponsored idolatry in the past, and they will again in the prophetic future. They became deranged by their senseless, overbearing pride in the past, and they will again in the predicted future. They were blatantly impious in their desecration of holy things in the past, and they will be again in the foretold future. ... But that is not all; there is yet a final touch. Man will finally seek to displace God altogether."<sup>3</sup>

"If Belshazzar ... typified the impiety that dared to lift itself up against the Lord of heaven, Darius sets forth the exaltation of

---

<sup>1</sup>Goldingay, p. 124.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., p. 119.

<sup>3</sup>Feinberg, p. 73. Paragraph division omitted.

man, and indeed, the substitution of man for God, as an object of worship."<sup>1</sup>

### 1. Daniel's promotion in the Persian government 6:1-3

6:1 When the Medo-Persian alliance overthrew the Neo-Babylonian Empire it acquired much geographic territory that it proceeded to incorporate into its kingdom. The Persian Empire became the largest that the world had yet seen, eventually encompassing much of modern Turkey (including the ancient Lydian Empire), Egypt, and parts of India and North Africa, as well as Babylonia.<sup>2</sup> Darius appointed 120 satraps ("protectors of the kingdom") over the kingdom of Babylon, which was one of the 127 provinces of the Persian Empire (cf. Esth. 1:1; 8:9).

"We remind again that the Darius mentioned here is the one whom we at the close of the last chapter identified with Gobryas of Gutium as he is called in other records."<sup>3</sup>

6:2 The 120 satraps reported to three commissioners, one of whom was Daniel. Evidently Darius had heard about Daniel's unique gifts and accomplishments as a Babylonian administrator and wanted to use him in his cabinet. The "king" here apparently refers to Darius. The Persian Empire consisted of 127 provinces (or kingdoms), and many of the rulers of these provinces, if not all of them, were considered kings. Cyrus the Great, who was the head of the Empire and ruler over all the provinces, called himself the "king of kings" on his tomb inscription.<sup>4</sup>

6:3 As time passed, Daniel distinguished himself above the other commissioners, even though he was evidently in his 80s at this time. Since Darius (Gobryas) was replaced as satrap of Babylon

---

<sup>1</sup>Dennett, p. 79.

<sup>2</sup>For good maps of the Persian Empire, see Barry J. Beitzel, *The Moody Atlas of Bible Lands*, pp. 150-51, map 68, or Carl G. Rasmussen, *Zondervan Atlas of the Bible*, p. 175.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, pp. 243-44.

<sup>4</sup>See Olmstead, pp. 65-66.

in 520 B.C. by Hystanes, the events described in this chapter took place before or during that year (cf. Hag. 1:1; Zech. 1:1).<sup>1</sup>

Darius purposed to put Daniel in charge of all the commissioners. The "entire kingdom" here probably refers to the entire kingdom over which Darius ruled (i.e., the Babylonian province of the Persian Empire).

These verses set the stage for what follows by helping the reader to appreciate how Darius felt about Daniel. The events of chapter 6 evidently took place in Babylon.

## **2. The conspiracy against Daniel 6:4-9**

6:4 The text does not say why the other officials wanted to get rid of Daniel. Perhaps his integrity made it difficult for them to get away with graft and political corruption. Maybe since he was quite old they wanted to eliminate him so someone from a younger generation could take his place. Anti-Semitism appears to have been part of their reason (cf. v. 13; 3:12). The text stresses the outstanding personal integrity and professional competence of Daniel.

"It is known in advance what an honest man will do in certain circumstances. Control the circumstances and you control him!"<sup>2</sup>

6:5 The accusers' plan was similar to that of the Babylonian officials who had tried to topple Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego (ch. 3). They knew that Daniel was a God-fearing man who did not worship pagan idols. So they set a trap for him believing that he would remain faithful to his faith. When Daniel had to choose between obeying his God or his government, his God came first (cf. v. 10; Acts 5:29).

"Verse 5 is the most magnificent tribute a man can win. If a hostile, jealous, watching world can

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., p. 133.

<sup>2</sup>Culver, "Daniel," p. 787.



discover nothing against a man save his devotion to his God, that man is truly Christlike."<sup>1</sup>

6:6-7 Daniel's adversaries then approached King Darius with a proposal. They exaggerated their claim that all the rulers of the kingdom had concurred with it. Obviously Daniel had not agreed to it. Nevertheless their claim was believable enough that Darius did not object or consult Daniel. Furthermore, the plan catered to the king's vanity. The proposed statute evidently covered petitions of a religious nature, rather than requests of any type, since a general ban, even a temporary ban, would have been absurd. It was evidently a statute that affected only the province of Babylon, since Darius was the ruler (king) of only one province within the empire. Perhaps the antagonistic rulers also aimed at impressing the Babylonians with the importance of remaining loyal to their new Persian ruler. In any case, they promoted humanism, the philosophy that puts man in the place of God.

"... this one king was to be regarded for the time being as the only representative of Deity."<sup>2</sup>

"*Parsism* [the official religion of Persia] did not indeed require men to regard the king as a god in his own proper nature, but to pay him supreme homage as the *representative* of Ormusd."<sup>3</sup>

"The probability is that Darius regarded this act as a pledge of loyalty to himself and a token of their desire to respect his authority to the utmost."<sup>4</sup>

The Babylonians burned criminals alive (ch. 4), but the Persians, who worshipped fire, threw them to the lions.

6:8-9 Under Persian law, the king was bound by the authority of a royal edict (vv. 8, 12, 15; cf. Esth. 1:19; 8:8). This made his power less than it was under an absolute dictator such as

---

<sup>1</sup>E. M. Blaiklock, *Today's Handbook of Bible Characters*, p. 275.

<sup>2</sup>Montgomery, p. 270.

<sup>3</sup>Moses Stuart, *A Commentary on the Book of Daniel*, p. 171.

<sup>4</sup>Walvoord, p. 137.

Nebuchadnezzar (cf. 2:39). Darius signed the proposed statute into law.

"The action of Darius was both foolish and wicked. What led him to yield to the request of the ministers can only be conjectured, but probably he was greatly influenced by the claim of deity which many of the Persian kings made."<sup>1</sup>

### **3. Daniel's faithfulness and Darius' predicament 6:10-15**

6:10 The new decree did not deter Daniel from continuing to pray for the welfare of the city where God had sent them into exile and for the Jews' return from exile. That this was the subject of his praying, among other things, including thanksgiving (v. 10), seems clear since Daniel possessed a copy of Jeremiah's prophecy (9:2; cf. Jer. 29:1, 7, 10). Jeremiah had written that God had promised to hear such prayers—if they were sincere and wholehearted—to restore the fortunes of the Jews, and to re-gather them to the Promised Land (Jer. 29:12-14).

Cyrus issued his decree allowing the Jews to return from exile in 538 B.C. (2 Chron. 36:22-23; Ezra 1:1-4). The events of Daniel 6 must have happened just before or shortly after this great turning point in Israel's history. The events recorded in this chapter may have played some part in Cyrus' decision to favor the Jews. Daniel refused to pray to the king, but he willingly prayed to the king's sovereign: Yahweh.

"It is not a question of a positive sin which he will not commit, but of a positive duty which he will not omit."<sup>2</sup>

"Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego refuse *positive* homage to the image of the world power (ch. 3); Daniel will not yield it even a *negative*

---

<sup>1</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 134.

<sup>2</sup>Driver, p. 71.

homage, by omitting for a time the worship of God (ch. 6)."<sup>1</sup>

Solomon had taught the Jews to pray to the LORD (Yahweh) facing Jerusalem, since that is where He promised to be in a special sense for them (2 Chron. 6:21, 34-39; cf. Ps. 5:7). Jesus Christ later emphasized that the place of worship is not as important as truly spiritual worship (John 4:20-24). Daniel's kneeling posture, reminiscent of Solomon's at the temple dedication, indicated his dependence on Yahweh as a suppliant. Normally the Jews stood when they prayed (cf. 1 Chron. 23:30; Neh. 9; Matt. 6:5; Mark 11:25; Luke 18:11, 13), but they kneeled—and sometimes prayed with their faces on the ground—when they felt a more urgent need (cf. 1 Kings 8:54; Ezra 9:5; Luke 22:41; Acts 7:60; 9:40; 20:36; 21:5).

Praying three times a day was evidently the practice of godly Jews dating back to David, if not before then (cf. Ps. 55:16-17). The fact that Daniel's window was open evidently symbolized for him that his prayers were unhindered. Windows in ancient Near Eastern cities were normally small, high, and had a lattice covering, so Daniel was probably not praying with his window open to be seen by others.<sup>2</sup>

"Such an upper chamber, *'ali*, would be constructed upon some corner of the roof or even upon a special tower and, having latticed windows in its sides, would allow a free circulation of air and would thus be a place sought out for rest and meditation. The insertion of a lattice in no sense made these windows spy proof [cf. 1 Kings 17:19; Acts 1:13; 10:9]."<sup>3</sup>

"While Daniel's consistency of life and testimony has been evident throughout the book of Daniel, here we learn the inner secret. In spite of the pressures of being a busy executive with many

---

<sup>1</sup>Jamieson, et al., p. 738. See also Ryrie, *Biblical Answers ...*, pp. 9-22, on civil disobedience.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, p. 129.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, p. 261.

demands upon his time, Daniel had retired to his house three times a day to offer his prayers for the peace of Jerusalem as well as for his personal needs. This was not the act of a person courting martyrdom but the continuation of a faithful ministry in prayer which had characterized his long life."<sup>1</sup>

"It was this prayer-fellowship with Yahweh that had safeguarded Daniel from the corrupting influences of Babylonian culture."<sup>2</sup>

"It is a common observation that those who have no regular habits of prayer very seldom do much praying. It is well for God's people purposefully and deliberately to set aside and faithfully adhere to a definite prayer schedule. Prayer is thus recognized as a [*sic*] important part of the Christian life and given the place which it deserves."<sup>3</sup>

"In times of testing believers need to remain faithful to God. Sometimes this will require:

- *Wisdom* to seek a creative compromise that enables the believer to meet society's expectations without violating his or her beliefs (1:8-14).
- *Courage* to be willing to stand up for one's beliefs when no compromise is possible (3:15-18).
- *Personal discipline* to develop a lifestyle of faithfulness so the right response to a test will come 'naturally' (6:10)."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 138.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 79.

<sup>3</sup>D. Edmond Hiebert, *Working with God: Scriptural Studies in Intercession*, p. 110.

<sup>4</sup>Dyer, in *The Old ...*, p. 703.

- 6:11 Daniel's colleagues knew about his prayer habits (cf. Phil. 4:6). They managed to observe him praying in his own house, somehow, in order to enable them to give eyewitness testimony that they had seen him violate the king's order. Did they suppose that Daniel would deny that he had been praying? They expected that the edict would not deter him from his regular devotional habit, even though it might cost him his life. What a testimony Daniel had among his fellow workers!
- 6:12-13 After reminding Darius of his decree, the hostile officials informed the king that his prime minister elect had violated it and was therefore worthy of death. Notice that they described Daniel as "one of the exiles from Judah" (cf. 2:25; 5:13), rather than as a royal cabinet minister. They were evidently hoping that Daniel's Jewish nationality and religion would contribute to Darius' distaste for him. This was not the result, however. They also used almost the same words that Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego's accusers had used, when they charged Daniel with disregarding the king (cf. 3:12). To them, prayer to Yahweh constituted disrespect for the king, rather than respect for the Most High God. How quickly and persistently humankind reverts to humanism.
- 6:14 Daniel had so won the king's favor that Darius immediately and energetically began trying to rescue his friend. Nebuchadnezzar had become angry with Daniel's three friends when they refused to idolize him (3:19), but Darius became angry with himself for signing the decree (cf. 2:1; 3:13; 5:6, 9). This shows how much he respected and valued Daniel.
- "How often it is that we are blinded to the nature of our actions until we encounter their irrevocable consequences!"<sup>1</sup>
- 6:15 Daniel's accusers reminded the king that he could not change the statute that he had signed into law.

---

<sup>1</sup>Dennett, p. 85.

**4. Daniel in the lions' den 6:16-18**

6:16 "Though absolutely blameless, Daniel was thrown into the den of lions. He suffered because of the jealousy of others."<sup>1</sup>

Darius' parting words to Daniel are significant. One could render them "Your God whom you serve continually, He will deliver you."<sup>2</sup> Darius' idea seems to have been that he had wanted to save Daniel but had failed. Now Yahweh must save him. We do not know, of course, if Darius knew about Yahweh's deliverance of Daniel's three friends.

"Observable in this assurance of Darius is the deep impression that Daniel's personal piety and faithfulness to God had made upon the king and that this impression had brought about Darius' own conviction that Daniel's God would come to his rescue in Daniel's extremity."<sup>3</sup>

Again we see that God did not preserve His servant from difficulty but brought him through it safely, which is His normal way of dealing with His own.

6:17 The lions' den appears to have been a large pit in the ground with an opening above that a large stone sealed, probably in order to keep people from stumbling into it. Such pits were commonly used as cisterns to store water or as prisons.<sup>4</sup> Daniel had to be lifted up out of it (v. 23), and others when thrown into it fell down toward its bottom (v. 24). It may also have had a side entrance or drain since, if it did not, rain could have filled the den and drowned the lions. Keil summarized a description of a fairly modern lions' den in Morocco written by Höst.<sup>5</sup> However, statements in the text cast the type of lions' den pictured in this description into question. The king and his nobles sealed the stone that covered the opening to make sure

---

<sup>1</sup>Bramer, p. 158.

<sup>2</sup>Franz Rosenthal, *A Grammar of Biblical Aramaic*, pp. 54-55.

<sup>3</sup>Walvoord, p. 140.

<sup>4</sup>Goldingay, p. 128.

<sup>5</sup>Keil, p. 216. He cited Ge. Höst, *Fez and Morocco*, p. 77.

that no one would release Daniel (cf. the sealing of Jesus' tomb).

- 6:18 In contrast to Nebuchadnezzar, who showed no compassion for Daniel's three friends, Darius spent a fitful night without food, entertainment, or sleep. Normally prayer accompanied fasting among the Israelites. Darius may have prayed too, but the point of this description is that he felt extremely anxious over the welfare of his friend.

#### **5. Daniel's deliverance and his enemies' destruction** **6:19-24**

- 6:19-20 Evidently one night in the lions' den was the minimum sentence that the law required, because early the next morning Darius set out to free Daniel—if he had survived. Uncertain about the prophet's fate, the king called to Daniel, whom he could not see, hoping that he might still be alive. Daniel had apparently told Darius previously that he worshipped the living God. Now Darius wanted to know if this God had been able to save His servant from the lions (cf. v. 16; 3:17).
- 6:21-22 Daniel's voice was untroubled. He even sermonized a bit from his unlikely chapel amid his subdued animal companions. After greeting the king courteously, he explained that his God had sent His angel who had shut the lions' mouths (cf. Heb. 11:33). This may have been the same angel, or the angel of the LORD, who had visited Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego in the fiery furnace (3:28).

Daniel believed that God had had mercy on him because he had not sinned against God or against Darius in what he had done. True, he had violated the king's edict, but he had not done anything that really harmed the king.

"Daniel's faithfulness got him into trouble (v. 10); his faith got him out of it (see Heb. 11:33)."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Nelson ...*, p. 1431.

6:23 God had rewarded Daniel's trust, which Daniel demonstrated by obeying God's will. Darius had Daniel extracted from the den, and undoubtedly marveled that he had sustained no injuries whatsoever (cf. 3:27). Compare the accounts of Peter's and Paul's releases from prison in Acts 12 and 16. Some see Daniel's deliverance as typical of the faithful remnant's deliverance during the future days of Antichrist's sway.<sup>1</sup>

6:24 Then the king applied the *lex talionis* (law of retaliation) and cast his friend's accusers into the very den in which they had placed Daniel (cf. Gen. 12:3; Esth. 7:9-10; Gal. 6:7). Before they reached the bottom of the den the lions overpowered and crushed them.<sup>2</sup>

"Among the Persians, all the kindred were involved in the guilt of one culprit."<sup>3</sup>

"What Darius did seems arbitrary and unjust. But ancient pagan despots had no regard for the provision in the Mosaic law (Deut 24:16): 'Fathers shall not be put to death for their children, nor children put to death for their fathers; each is to die for his own sin.' (Even in Israel this humanitarian rule had been flouted, as when Abimelech ben Gideon had nearly all his father's sons massacred, or when Queen Athaliah nearly exterminated the Davidic royal line and Jehu had all Ahab's sons decapitated.)"<sup>4</sup>

The effects of people's sins touch others beside themselves. The execution of the evildoers' family members seems unfair and cruel, but it reflects the principle of corporate solidarity that was common in the biblical world.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Dennett, p. 90.

<sup>2</sup>See Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 10:11:6.

<sup>3</sup>Jamieson, et al., p. 745.

<sup>4</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 82.

<sup>5</sup>See Joel S. Kaminsky, *Corporate Responsibility in the Hebrew Bible*.



**6. Darius' decree and praise of Yahweh 6:25-28**

6:25 This story ends, as previous ones in the book did, with the king issuing another decree. It evidently went to everyone who lived in the kingdom that was under Darius' authority (v. 26).

6:26-27 Darius' decree ordered all of his subjects to respect Daniel's God. His expression of praise for Yahweh surpassed Nebuchadnezzar's (cf. 3:28-29; 4:3, 34-35, 37).

"But, though this decree goes far, it does not go far enough; had he [Darius] come up to his present convictions, he would have commanded all men not only to fear before this God, but to love him and trust in him, to forsake the service of their idols, and to worship him only."<sup>1</sup>

It is as though God was giving two witnesses to His people Israel: Nebuchadnezzar and Darius. Both monarchs testified to the living and eternal God's unshakable sovereignty, grace, and power in heaven and on earth (cf. 4:3, 34-35). These testimonies certainly would have encouraged the Israelites to trust Him in spite of the circumstances of the exile.

"Once again, during this time of Israel's helplessness with her survival in doubt, Yahweh of hosts acted redemptively to strengthen his people's faith in him. On the eve of their return to the Land of Promise under the leadership of Zerubbabel, God reassured them that he was still the same as in the days of Moses and was able to take them back to Canaan, where they could establish a new commonwealth in covenant fellowship with him."<sup>2</sup>

6:28 The last verse of this chapter notes that Daniel continued to enjoy success during the reign of Darius (over the province of Babylon) and the reign of Cyrus (over the Persian Empire). Cyrus' first full year as ruler over Babylon was 538 B.C., and

---

<sup>1</sup>Henry, p. 1093.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 83.

this is when Daniel's career in government service ended (1:21). This was the same year that Cyrus issued his decree permitting the Jews to return to their homeland. Daniel received the revelations of chapters 10 through 12 in the third year of Cyrus' reign (10:1), but he was apparently no longer in government service then.

"Although historical and to be accepted in its literal portrayal of an event, it [this chapter] is also parabolic like chapter 3 and is a foreshadowing of the ultimate deliverance of the people of Israel from their persecutors in the time of the great tribulation at the end of the times of the Gentiles. When the power of God is finally demonstrated at the second coming of Christ, the persecutors of Israel and the enemies of God will be judged and destroyed much like the enemies of Daniel. Like Daniel, however, the people of God in persecution must remain true regardless of the cost."<sup>1</sup>

The first six chapters of Daniel contain his so-called "court tales." Rationalistic critics of the book are quicker to grant them a sixth-century B.C. date of composition than they are the remaining six chapters, which are more explicitly prophetic. Conservative scholars affirm that there is ample historical, linguistic, and literary evidence for a sixth-century B.C. date for these chapters.<sup>2</sup>

"In the first part of his book the writer presents the situations out of which his theology has grown, and the lessons are plain for all to see. But from the very fact that his God is in control of time and circumstances in heaven as well as earth, any experience of His deeds, whenever it may have occurred, is valid for all time and even for eternity (6:26). It is on this firm theological understanding that the revelations of the second part of the book are made."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 144.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, p. 37; Richard D. Patterson, "Holding on to Daniel's Court Tales," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 36:4 (December 1993):445-54. See also Longman and Dillard, pp. 391-92, for discussion of the unity of the book.

<sup>3</sup>Baldwin, p. 135. She divided the book into two parts: chs. 1 through 6 and 7 through 12.

**F. DANIEL'S VISION OF FUTURE WORLD HISTORY CH. 7**

"As interpreted by conservative expositors, the vision of Daniel [in chapter 7] provides the most comprehensive and detailed prophecy of future events to be found anywhere in the Old Testament."<sup>1</sup>

"The vision's setting in the Book of Daniel makes it the book's central hinge. In language [i.e., Aramaic], it belongs with the preceding chapters, while structurally it rounds off a chiasm begun in chap. 2:

- 2     A vision of four kingdoms and their end (Nebuchadnezzar)
- 3     Faithfulness and a miraculous rescue (the three friends)
- 4     Judgment presaged and experienced (Nebuchadnezzar)
- 5     Judgment presaged and experienced (Belshazzar)
- 6     Faithfulness and a miraculous rescue (Daniel)
- 7     A vision of four kingdoms and their end (Daniel) ..."<sup>2</sup>

Goldingay recorded many excellent comparisons and contrasts between chapter 7 and chapters 2 through 6.<sup>3</sup>

This is the first of four visions that Daniel recorded in chapters 7 through 12 (cf. chs. 8; 9; 10—12). In this great seventh chapter Daniel revealed the consecutive history of four major world empires, concluding with the coming of Jesus Christ from heaven and the establishment of His kingdom—a fifth kingdom (cf. ch. 2). Thus it provides a framework for more detailed revelation of these kingdoms that follows in the Book of Daniel and in the New Testament, especially in the Book of Revelation. Chapter 7 gives more information about the kingdoms that Daniel had already revealed in chapter 2 (cf. Pss. 2; 110).

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 145.

<sup>2</sup>Goldingay, pp. 157-58. See J. Paul Tanner, "The Literary Structure of the Book of Daniel," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 160:639 (July-September 2003):269-82, who also argued for chapter 7 being the hinge of the book.

<sup>3</sup>Goldingay, pp. 158-59.

"In chapter 2, the four earthly kingdoms and Christ's heavenly kingdom were seen in their outward political appearance; by contrast, chapter 7 presents God's estimate of their innermost moral and spiritual features. In chapter 2, the symbols were taken from inanimate objects; here in chapter 7, they are taken from the animate. In chapter 2, King Nebuchadnezzar saw the splendor of world empires portrayed in the dazzling statue of a man, while the Kingdom of God was symbolized by a stone. By contrast, in chapter 7, Daniel's vision reveals the animalistic character of world empires and the fact that it is only in the Kingdom of God that man's full dignity is realized—in the Son of Man."<sup>1</sup>

"Almost all interpreters understand that these two visions are to be interpreted in the same way. ... These four kingdoms, according to the interpretation commonly received in the church, are the Babylonian, the Medo-Persian, the Macedo-Grecian, and the Roman. 'In this interpretation and opinion,' Luther observes, 'all the world are agreed, and history and fact abundantly establish it.' This opinion prevailed till about the end of the last [seventeenth] century, for the contrary opinion of individual earlier interpreters had found no favour. But from that time, when faith in the supernatural origin and character of biblical prophecy was shaken by Deism and Rationalism, then as a consequence, with the rejection of the genuineness of the book of Daniel the reference of the fourth kingdom to the Roman world-monarchy was also denied."<sup>2</sup>

Deists and rationalists, in contrast to supernaturalists, believe that there is no such thing as predictive prophecy. Therefore they believe that someone must have written the Book of Daniel after the events recorded happened.

"Critics hold that the real author of Daniel lived in the time of the persecution of Antiochus Epiphanes (175-163 B.C.), and that from the viewpoint of the second century B.C. he looked backward over the preceding four centuries, organized history in a manner which was significant for him, and made this the

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, pp. 83-84. Paragraph division omitted. See also Jamieson, et al., p. 746; and Whitcomb, pp. 92-93.

<sup>2</sup>Keil, pp. 245-46. See also pp. 19-57, for defense of the genuineness of the book.

basis for anticipating a climax to the Maccabean persecution then under way. Accordingly, the pseudo-Daniel considered Antiochus as symbolic of the wickedness of the powers of this world which the author believed were soon to be judged by God, who was to intervene and replace the rule of tyranny under Antiochus by that of the saints of the Most High."<sup>1</sup>

Many of these critics believe that the four empires in view in chapters 2 and 7 are not Babylon, Persia, Greece, and Rome, but Babylon, Media, Persia, and Greece. Rowley and Montgomery are representative commentators who held this opinion. According to them, Rome was not a significant enough power in the world in the second century B.C. to warrant identifying it as the fourth kingdom. However, Jesus Christ spoke of an aspect of the fourth kingdom ("the abomination of desolation") as still being future (Matt. 24:15; cf. Dan. 12:11).

Josephus acknowledged that Daniel wrote about Antiochus Epiphanes and the Roman government before they came to pass.<sup>2</sup> The Book of Revelation, which was written close to the end of the first century A.D., likewise predicts the fulfillment of aspects of this kingdom in the future (e.g., Rev. 13). Furthermore, Daniel 9:26 predicted the cutting off of Messiah and the destruction of Jerusalem, both of which happened in the first century A.D.

Critics support their identification of the empires with two main points: First, references to Darius the Mede in chapter 6 indicate to them that the Median Empire was a significant enough one by itself for the writer to single it out. However, that very chapter states that it was the joint kingdom of the Medes and Persians that was then in power (6:8, 12, 15). Second, Greece would have been the dominant world power when pseudo-Daniel wrote in the second century B.C. This argument assumes the critics' hypothesis that someone wrote Daniel in the second century B.C., and reads the text through that grid.

A better approach is to respect the text as it stands and seek to harmonize it with the rest of Scripture and the facts of history. This leads to the more natural conclusion that Daniel received revelations of the future—from his sixth-century perspective—from God. History has shown that there was one unified Medo-Persian Empire, and that what Daniel wrote about the

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, p. 147.

<sup>2</sup>Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 10:11:7.

third and fourth empires fits Greece and Rome better than it fits Persia and Greece. It also shows that what Daniel predicted of the first three kingdoms, as well as some of what he wrote about the fourth kingdom, has happened. Scripture indicates that some revelation concerning the fourth kingdom, and all the revelation about the fifth kingdom, describes what is still future from our perspective in history.

### 1. The four beasts 7:1-8

7:1 We have already read of two dreams that Nebuchadnezzar had (2:1; 4:5). Now God gave one to Daniel. It was a vision from God that came to Daniel as he lay on his bed.

"In referring to the experience as 'a dream' (sing.) Daniel was emphasizing the unity of the revelation and in referring to it as 'visions' (pl.) he emphasized the successive stages in which the revelation was given. ... The dream refers to his being asleep, and the visions refer to what he saw while dreaming."<sup>1</sup>

This revelation came to Daniel in the first year of Belshazzar's reign as co-regent of Babylon with his father, Nabonidus, namely, in 553 B.C.<sup>2</sup> It was fitting that this vision of the downfall of world empires should come to the prophet during the reign of the last king of Babylon. God gave it to him 50 years after the similar revelation of the great image in chapter 2 (cf. Gen. 41:25, 32).

"... Nebuchadnezzar, the founder of the world-power, saw this power in its imposing greatness and glory [ch. 2]; which Daniel, the prophet of God, saw it in its opposition to God in the form of ravenous beasts of prey [ch. 7]."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1350.

<sup>2</sup>Wood, *A Commentary ...*, p. 179; Archer, "Daniel," pp. 84-85; Whitcomb, p. 91; Chisholm, p. 304. *The New Bible Dictionary*, s.v. "Belshazzar," by D. J. Wiseman, p. 139, claimed the year was 556 B.C.

<sup>3</sup>Keil, p. 221.

Daniel would have been about 68 years old when he received this vision. Chronologically we can place this chapter between chapters 4 and 5.

CHRONOLOGY OF THE VISIONS IN DANIEL 7—12 <sup>1</sup>			
Chapter 7	Chapter 8	Chapter 9	Chaps 10—12
1 <sup>st</sup> Vision	2 <sup>nd</sup> Vision	3 <sup>rd</sup> Vision	4 <sup>th</sup> Vision
First Year of Belshazzar	Third Year of Belshazzar	First Year of Darius	Third Year of Darius
553 BC	550 BC	539-538 BC	536-535 BC

"God does not reveal all His truths at once, even to the wise, but reserves much for age and experience."<sup>2</sup>

Upon waking, Daniel recorded what he had seen. What follows in this chapter, he wrote, is only a summary of what he saw.

"For the first time in the book, a vision is written down. Earlier OT prophecies were put into writing as a stage in implementing them and, when they were disbelieved, as an evidence that they had been given before the events of which they spoke, and thus were indeed words from God (see Isa 8:1, 16; 30:8; Jer 36; Hab 2:2)."<sup>3</sup>

7:2 Daniel referred to himself in the third person in the first six chapters, but in the last six he used the first person. He may have made this change in order to make his visions more impressive and persuasive to the reader. As noted earlier, it was common for the biblical writers to describe themselves by using both the first and the third persons.

---

<sup>1</sup>Tanner, p. 396.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, p. 138.

<sup>3</sup>Goldingay, p. 184.

Daniel saw "the great sea," quite probably the Mediterranean Sea (cf. Num. 34:6-7; Josh. 1:4; 9:1; Ezek. 47:10; et al.), stirred up by the four winds (or spirits) of heaven (v. 2; cf. Jer. 23:19; 49:36; Zech. 6:1-6; Rev. 7:1-3; et al.). The sea in Scripture, and in ancient Near Eastern thinking, represented the unorganized mass of humanity: the populace of the earth (v. 17; cf. Isa. 8:6-8; 17:12-13; 57:20; 60:5; Jer. 6:23; 46:7-8; 47:2; Matt. 13:47; Luke 21:25; Rev. 13:1; 17:1, 15; 21:1; et al.). The Mediterranean world seems to be particularly in view, since the sea was the Mediterranean Sea. The wind represents God's power expressed in judgment, using heavenly and earthly forces from all directions in order to influence the nations as He wills (cf. Rev. 7:1; 9:14-15).<sup>1</sup>

"God often used the wind as a means to attain His ends (Gen 8:1; Ex 10:13-19; 14:21; 15:10; Num 11:31; I Ki 18:45; 19:11). ... Of more than 120 references in the Bible to wind (more than 90 in the O.T. and about 30 in the N.T.), well over half are related to events and ideas which reflect the sovereignty and power of God. In Daniel, wind is uniformly used to represent the sovereign power of God, which is the viewpoint of the book."<sup>2</sup>

7:3 The four beasts arising out of the sea represent four kings (v. 17). They personify the nations over which they rule, as becomes clear in the following revelation. They are abnormal, as are the other characters presented, and their abnormalities have significance.

"The monarchy vision of Nebuchadnezzar (ch. 2) covers the same order of fulfillment as Daniel's beast vision, but with this difference: Nebuchadnezzar saw the imposing outward power and splendor of 'the times of the Gentiles' (Lk. 21:24; cp. Rev. 16:19 ...), whereas Daniel saw the true character of Gentile world government as rapacious and warlike, established and maintained

---

<sup>1</sup>Cf. Keil, pp. 222-23.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, p. 152. Cf. Gen. 1:2.



by force. It is remarkable that the heraldic insignia of the Gentile nations are all beasts or birds of prey."<sup>1</sup>

7:4 The first beast looked like a lion, but it also had the wings of an eagle. It was common in ancient Near Eastern art to combine notable features of various animals into one composite animal figure in order to stress outstanding features in a symbolic object. Often animals represented nations, as they still do (cf. the eagle as a symbol of America, the bear of Russia, the dragon of China, etc.). Other biblical writers had compared Nebuchadnezzar to a lion and an eagle (cf. Jer. 4:7; 49:19; 50:17, 44; 49:22; Lam. 4:19; Ezek. 17:3, 12; Hab. 1:8). As Daniel watched, something plucked this beast's wings off, made it stand on two feet like a man, and gave it a human mind (lit. heart).

Many nations have used the lion as a symbol of royal power because it is the traditional king of beasts (cf. 1 Kings 10:20; 2 Chron. 9:19). Similarly the eagle has long represented the king of birds (cf. Ezek. 17:3, 7). Almost all interpreters, conservative and critical, believe that this lion represents Neo-Babylonia. Huge winged lions guarded the gates of the royal Babylonian palaces.<sup>2</sup> Babylon used both the lion and the eagle as national emblems (cf. Jer. 4:7, 13; Ezek. 17:3). The cropping of the lion's wings may allude to the humiliation of Nebuchadnezzar (ch. 4),<sup>3</sup> or perhaps to the deterioration of his kingdom after his death.<sup>4</sup> After Nebuchadnezzar's humbling by God, he became more humane.<sup>5</sup>

"Whatever may have been the attitude of other kings who succeeded Nebuchadnezzar is not to be considered, for all his successors were men of

---

<sup>1</sup> *The New Scofield Reference Bible*, p. 907.

<sup>2</sup> Walvoord, p. 153.

<sup>3</sup> Leupold, pp. 289-90; Archer, "Daniel," p. 85.

<sup>4</sup> Feinberg, p. 86. Dyer, in *The Old ...*, p. 713, believed Nebuchadnezzar (ch. 4) and Belshazzar (ch. 5) are in view in these two wings.

<sup>5</sup> For additional study of prophecies about Babylon, see John F. Walvoord, *The Nations in Prophecy*, pp. 61-69.

inferior caliber, and the history of Babylon practically ends with him."<sup>1</sup>

- 7:5 The second beast resembled a bear. The Old Testament writers spoke of the bear as the most formidable beast of prey in Canaan after the lion (cf. 1 Sam. 17:34; Amos 5:19; cf. 2 Kings 2:24; Hos. 13:8).<sup>2</sup> The bear that Daniel saw appeared stronger on one side than the other. This probably reflects the superior strength of the Persian part of the Medo-Persian Empire (cf. 8:3, 20).

The three ribs in the bear's mouth probably stand for three nations, or three parts of one nation, that Persia had devoured, was devouring, or would devour. When Daniel saw this vision, Persia had not yet overthrown Babylonia, so perhaps these were nations of less prominence that it had already conquered. Some scholars believe the ribs refer to the Babylonian, Lydian, and Egyptian Empires, all of which Persia conquered eventually.<sup>3</sup> Others suggest that they may refer to Media, Persia, and Babylon, the three major components of the Persian Empire.<sup>4</sup>

Daniel heard voices (angelic?) encouraging the bear to devour much meat. This probably indicates that it would yet subdue many nations. Persia devoured more territory and people than Babylon did; it was voracious. Persia ruled for 208 years before Alexander the Great toppled it in 331 B.C., and its geographic extent was far-reaching.

- 7:6 Most conservative Bible students have identified the third kingdom with Greece, because Greece overthrew Persia ("dominion was given to it"). Leadership in the ancient Near East passed from Assyria to Babylon in 612 B.C., from Babylon to Persia in 539 B.C., and from Persia to Greece in 331 B.C.

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 290.

<sup>2</sup>See Driver, p. 82.

<sup>3</sup>Keil, p. 226; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 145; Leupold, p. 292; McGee, 3:570; Archer, "Daniel," p. 86; Whitcomb, p. 95; Wiersbe, p. 282; *The Nelson ...*, p. 1431..

<sup>4</sup>E.g., Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 156.

"... when the book of Daniel was showed him [Alexander], wherein Daniel declared that one of the Greeks should destroy the empire of the Persians, he supposed that himself was the person intended ..." <sup>1</sup>

Greece bore the characteristics of the animal described here. Leopards (or panthers<sup>2</sup>) are less majestic and ponderous than lions and bears. Their outstanding characteristics are their speed, strength, and cunning (cf. Jer. 5:6; Hos. 13:7; Hab. 1:8). The four wings on this leopard's back made it even faster.

"With the swiftness of a leopard, Alexander the Great conquered most of the civilized world all the way from Macedonia to Africa and eastward to India [334-331 B.C.]. The lightning character of his conquests is without precedent in the ancient world, and this is fully in keeping with the image of speed embodied in the leopard itself and the four wings on its back." <sup>3</sup>

"Alexander was twenty years old when he began his wars. When he was twenty-six he conquered Darius, and became master of the whole Persian empire; but when he was thirty-two years of age, in his full strength, he was broken. He died of a drunken surfeit [excess], or, as some suspect, by poison, and left no child living." <sup>4</sup>

Alexander did have two sons, Hercules and Alexander, but Olympias, Alexander's mother, poisoned them, as well as Alexander's brother, Arideus, who had been made king in Macedonia. <sup>5</sup>

Apparently each wing had some connection with each of this animal's four heads. Heads suggest intelligent direction.

---

<sup>1</sup>Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 11:8:5.

<sup>2</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 145-46.

<sup>3</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 157. See also Finegan, *Light from ...*, p. 244.

<sup>4</sup>Henry, p. 1096.

<sup>5</sup>*Ibid.*, p. 1101.

Greece had four governmental divisions with one person heading each division. Following Greece's defeat at Ipsus in Phrygia, in 301 B.C., the Grecian Empire divided into four parts under Alexander's four generals.

There is some question about who these four men were. Jerome and Calvin believed that they were Ptolemy, Seleucus, Philip, and Antigonus.<sup>1</sup> Josephus wrote that there were five men: Antigonus (who ruled Asia), Seleucus (Babylon), Lysimachus (the Hellespont), Cassander (Macedonia), and Ptolemy (Egypt).<sup>2</sup> Most modern commentators think they were Lysimachus (who ruled Thrace and Bithynia), Cassander (Macedonia and Greece), Seleucus (Syria, Babylonia, and the eastern territories), and Ptolemy (Egypt, Palestine, and Arabia Petrea).<sup>3</sup>

Each of these successors ruled one of the geographical segments of Alexander's empire: Greece, Western Asia, Egypt, and Persia. The exact identification of the rulers is debatable because it took about 20 years for the kingdom to be successfully divided. But there is no question that Greece split into four major parts after Alexander died (cf. 8:8, 22).

A third conservative view, which I do not think is as strong, is that the four wings and heads represent the four corners of the earth.<sup>4</sup>

Archer wrote the following in response to the critical claim that the third beast represents Persia:

"... there is no way in which a quadripartite character can be made out for the Persian Empire

---

<sup>1</sup>Jerome, *Commentary on Daniel*, p. 75; John Calvin, *Commentaries on the Book of the Prophet Daniel*, 2:18-19.

<sup>2</sup>Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 12:1:1.

<sup>3</sup>E.g., Keil, p. 293; Feinberg, pp. 87-88; Whitcomb, p. 95. Cf. Finegan, *Light from ...*, pp. 244-46.

<sup>4</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 146.

either under Cyrus or under any of his successors."<sup>1</sup>

7:7 Most conservative scholars believe that the fourth beast represents the Roman Empire, but critical scholars interpret it as referring to Greece. Walvoord called the identification of the fourth beast in chapter 7 "the crucial issue in the interpretation of the entire book of Daniel."<sup>2</sup>

In contrast to Greece, the rise and fall of the Roman Empire was slow. It began in 241 B.C. with the occupation of Sicily. Gradually it expanded throughout the whole Mediterranean world: western Europe, including Britain, Gaul (modern France and Germany), and Spain; and western Asia, as far east as the Caspian Sea and the Persian Gulf. Its western branch formally ended in A.D. 410, when the Visigoths sacked Rome.<sup>3</sup> However, its governmental influence persisted as late as A.D. 1453, when the last Roman ruler died in battle in Constantinople.<sup>4</sup>

"... it may be correctly argued that the pattern of empire development adopted by the Romans has been followed by practically all the succeeding world powers. Roman law is said still to be the pattern of jurisprudence. Roman classic literature dominates the literature produced since that time. In fact, the powers that can be said to have anything like world dominion are segments of the old Roman Empire, and so the fourth beast is still in a sense alive though Rome was overthrown."<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 86. For additional responses to the critics' view, see Leupold, pp. 287-88, or Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, pp. 158-59.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., p. 159.

<sup>3</sup>Jamieson, et al., p. 747, set the Western Empire's demise at A.D. 731.

<sup>4</sup>For a brief history of Rome, see Walvoord, *The Nations ...*, pp. 83-87. For a longer one, see C. E. Van Sickle, *A Political and Cultural History of the Ancient World*, vol. 2. The standard and most exhaustive ancient history is the 12-volume *Cambridge Ancient History*, edited by Bury, Cook, and Adcock.

<sup>5</sup>Leupold, p. 314.

Daniel did not compare the fourth beast that he saw to any known animal. It was unique. It was dreadful, terrifying, and extremely strong. Its large iron teeth chewed up what it attacked, and its feet crushed and trampled everything left by the former beasts.

"... the Roman empire was ruthless in its destruction of civilizations and peoples, killing captives by the thousands and selling them into slavery by the hundreds of thousands."<sup>1</sup>

"Rome had no interest in raising the conquered nations to any high level of development. All her designs were imperial; let the nations be crushed and stamped underfoot."<sup>2</sup>

The identification of the 10 horns of this beast is more difficult. There is some obvious similarity between these 10 horns and the toes of the image in chapter 2. They apparently represent 10 contemporaneous rulers (v. 17). Horns pictured strength and rulers in ancient Near Eastern iconography (the visual images and symbols used in works of art), yet scholars have not been able to agree on the identification of 10 outstanding rulers of the Roman Empire who ruled simultaneously.

There are two basic views about the identity of the 10 horns: First, some scholars spiritualize the number 10 as well as the number three (v. 8). That is, they do not take them literally. Almost all of the interpreters in this camp are amillennial. "Amillennial" refers to the belief that Jesus Christ will not reign on the earth for 1,000 years in any literal sense.

Of these interpreters, some believe these numbers, 10 and three, refer to past rulers, even though we cannot identify them. Young and Leupold took the number 10 as figuratively indicating completeness.<sup>3</sup> Others believe the number refers

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 161.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, pp. 297-98.

<sup>3</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, pp. 148-50; Leupold, pp. 322.

generally to those who will reign with Christ in the future in heaven.

The second view as to the identity of the 10 horns is that the numbers 10 and three should be taken literally. That is how most other numbers in the book make sense.<sup>1</sup> There is no clue in the text that we should interpret these numbers non-literally. This more consistent method of interpretation is what characterizes premillennialism. Premillennialists believe that prophecy, if interpreted literally—while recognizing the presence of figures of speech and symbols—teaches that Jesus Christ will rule on the earth for 1,000 years following His Second Coming.

Even amillennialists acknowledge that if one interprets prophecy consistently literally, he or she will come out a premillennialist. They do not do so, however, because they believe that such a literal interpretation yields fanciful results. Consequently, they argue, we should adopt a different hermeneutic (method of interpretation) when reading prophecy, namely, a less literal one.

Most premillenarians believe that the 10 horns describe 10 rulers who will arise in the future and reign simultaneously. This seems unlikely to many, since the Roman Empire is no longer in existence, at least in the form in which it existed in ancient times. However, there seem to be indications in Daniel and elsewhere in the Bible, which I will point out later, that God will reshape or revive the Roman Empire in the future. It may not be called "the Roman Empire," but it will have connections to the old Roman Empire. Darby referred to it as "Europe."<sup>2</sup> But it will evidently be a worldwide "empire." As mentioned previously, the essential elements in the old Roman Empire have continued to mark civilization ever since Rome fell. So, in a sense, the Roman Empire still exists.

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Walvoord, Archer, Pentecost, Wood, Feinberg, Campbell, Ironside, and Culver. See also Anderson, p. 148.

<sup>2</sup>D[arby], *Studies in ...*, p. 38.

7:8 Daniel noticed an eleventh horn arising among the 10, which displaced three of the 10 horns. This horn had human eyes, probably symbolic of intelligence, and a mouth that spoke boastfully (cf. vv. 11, 20, 25). Another view is that the mention of "eyes like human eyes" indicates that he was only human.<sup>1</sup> This is evidently Antichrist (cf. Isa. 27:1; Matt. 24:5, 15; 2 Thess. 2:3-4; 1 John 2:18; 4:3; Rev. 13; 17; 19).

Leupold interpreted the three horns figuratively:

"For the present let it be remarked that no *special* significance is attached to the *three* horns. They are not to be counted literally; they bear no relation to three rulers of three kingdoms. The three is here, as it was in v. 5, merely a convenient number for conveying the idea of a sufficiently large measure of success."<sup>2</sup>

Daniel saw a different little horn in another later vision that he reported witnessing (8:9-11). However, the differences between these two little horns argue for their being different rulers, as my comments on 8:9 through 11 will show. Rulers represent the nations that they lead, as well as the rulers themselves (cf. vv. 17, 23).

## **2. The Ancient of Days and the destruction of the fourth beast 7:9-12**

"This section is one of the glorious judgment scenes of the Scriptures."<sup>3</sup>

7:9 In some English versions this verse, and some that follow (vv. 10, 13-14), are in poetic form. This indicates a different style in the original language (Aramaic), which sets these verses off as distinct and more elevated in literary form, in the opinion of the translators.

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 229.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, pp. 298-99.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., p. 300.



From what Daniel recorded, it seems clear that now he saw something happening in the courts of heaven. He saw thrones set up. The AV translation "thrones were cast down" is inaccurate.

The Apostle John later saw thrones in heaven too (Rev. 1:4; 4:4; 20:4; et al.). The Ancient of Days seems to refer to God the Father (cf. vv. 13, 22; Isa. 43:13; 57:15), whereas, in 7:13, God the Son is in view. Since God is a triune being, it is not unusual that this would be the case. Gaebelien took the Ancient of Days as a reference to Jesus Christ here (cf. John 5:22; Rev. 1:12-14), but this seems less likely (cf. v. 13).<sup>1</sup> Daniel then saw God take His seat on His heavenly throne.

The title Ancient of Days stresses God's eternity. His pure white clothing pictures His purity and holiness, and His pure woolly hair suggests His purity and His mature judgment. Daniel saw His throne blazing with fire (lit. a burning flame), which is symbolic of knowledge, purity, and judgment in Scripture (cf. Exod. 3:2; Deut. 4:24; 1 Tim. 6:16; Heb. 12:29; Rev. 1:14-15). The wheels probably imply that the throne and God can go in any direction and that He can, therefore, do anything that He pleases (His omnipresence and omnipotence; cf. Ezek. 1:13-21).<sup>2</sup>

- 7:10 A river of fire was flowing out from before the throne of God, probably symbolizing judgment proceeding from Him. Those attending Him were evidently angels (cf. Deut. 33:2). The court (cf. v. 26) seems to be a heavenly venue in which God renders judgment on rulers and their nations based on their deeds (Job 1—2; Isa. 65:6; Mal. 3:16; Rev. 20:12; cf. Matt. 25:31-46).
- 7:11 The return to prose language signals the shift in Daniel's observation from heaven to earth, and the content of the revelation confirms this change.

---

<sup>1</sup>Gaebelien, *The Prophet ...*, p. 77.

<sup>2</sup>For similar descriptions of the Canaanite pantheon in Canaanite myth, see John Day, *Yahweh and the Gods and Goddesses of Canaan*, p. 106.

The boastful words of the horn (v. 8) kept attracting Daniel's attention. God passed judgment on the fourth beast and destroyed it along with all its horns (cf. Luke 21: 24-27; Rev. 19:20). Similarly, the stone cut out without hands crushed the toes of the image in chapter 2—suddenly and violently.

- 7:12 The end of the prior three empires contrasts with the end of this fourth one. God took away the dominion of each of the earlier three kingdoms one by one, but they continued to exist "for an appointed period of time," as realms of the kingdom that overcame them. But God will cut off the fourth empire completely, and it will continue no longer (v. 11). Thus the end of the fourth kingdom will result in a totally new condition on the earth. We learn next that this will be Messiah's reign on the earth (cf. Rev. 19:19—20:6).

### **3. The Son of Man's kingdom 7:13-14**

- 7:13 Daniel again saw something happening in heaven (cf. Rev. 5:1-10). One like a son of man was brought before the Ancient of Days. The angelic attendants in heaven's court probably ushered Him forward. This description glorifies the Ancient of Days, who then proceeded to give this Person authority to rule on earth (cf. Ps. 2:6; 110:1-2). The One like a son of man has similarities with human beings, as the title Son of Man implies. However, He comes with clouds of heaven, which elsewhere in Scripture describes how God has come to earth (cf. Exod. 13:21-22; 19:9, 16; 1 Kings 8:10-11; Ps. 18:10; Isa. 19:1; Jer. 4:13; Ezek. 10:4; et al.). Thus this One like a son of man appears to be a God-man (cf. Phil. 2:6-7).

The majority of both Jewish and Christian interpreters have understood this figure to be the Messiah.<sup>1</sup> The fact that this figure refers to the Son of God, Jesus Christ, becomes clear later in the Gospels, where Jesus used the title "Son of Man" more frequently of Himself than any other (cf. Mark 8:31; John 1:51; et al.). Other passages also describe Jesus Christ as

---

<sup>1</sup>See Keil, p. 234; Fruchtenbaum, pp. 255-59. See the commentaries for refutations of the views that this son of man refers to an angel, or the Israelites, or just a normal man.

coming in the clouds in the future (cf. Matt. 24:30; 26:64; Mark 13:26; Acts. 1:9; 1 Thess. 4:17; Rev. 1:7).

Because Jesus commonly used the title "Son of Man" to describe Himself, this is the most frequently quoted verse from Daniel in the New Testament. It is very significant that Jesus used this title above all others when describing Himself—some 31 times in Matthew alone.

"Although Messiah had already been named as God's 'Son' in previous prophetic utterances (cf. [2 Sam. 7:14;] Ps. 2:7, 12; Prov. 30:4), He is now given a name that emphasizes His true and total identification with mankind."<sup>1</sup>

Jesus' contemporaries used the title "Messiah" to describe a merely human leader who they believed would provide military liberation from their Roman oppressors. This limited understanding of Messiah's role made that title undesirable from Jesus' viewpoint, so He did not normally refer to himself as the Messiah. The title "Son of Man" should have taken Jesus' hearers back to Daniel 7:13, where a God-man is clearly in view.

Many of Jesus' contemporaries were willing to trust Him as their Messiah, but few were willing to acknowledge Him as the divine Son of Man (cf. Matt. 16:16; John 6:69). Jesus wanted them to believe that He was God, as well as man, and so preferred the title "Son of Man."

This title was also the one by which God normally referred to the prophet Ezekiel. But Ezekiel was obviously not the Son of Man predicted here. This title, when used of Ezekiel, stressed his humanity in contrast to more glorious beings, especially God.

"It is no exaggeration to say that no other concept in the Old Testament, not even the Servant of the Lord, has elicited a more prolific literature. Of all the figures used in the Old Testament to designate the coming deliverer;

---

<sup>1</sup>Whitcomb, p. 99.

king, priest, branch, servant, seed—none is more profound than 'Son of man'. Here there is a vision of man as he was intended to be, perfectly embodying all his potential in obedience to his Creator."<sup>1</sup>

"Thus the coming Messiah would not only be the true David, but He would also be the true Son of man, combining in His person the high calling of humanity and the position reserved alone for God."<sup>2</sup>

7:14      At this point this Son of Man became the prominent Person in Daniel's vision. He received dominion and glory and a kingdom from the Ancient of Days.

"This refers, not to his inherent sovereignty over the universe as God the Son (as consubstantial and co-eternal with the Father and the Holy Spirit), but to his appointment as absolute Lord and Judge by virtue of his atoning ministry as God incarnate—the one who achieved a sinless life (Isa 53:9), paid the price for man's redemption (Isa 53:5-6), and was vindicated by his bodily resurrection as Judge of the entire human race (Acts 17:31; Rom 2:16)."<sup>3</sup>

God the Father's intention in giving the Son of Man this authority (cf. Matt. 28:18) was that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve Him; He was to have global rule over everyone. Furthermore His kingdom would last forever, in contrast to the preceding four kingdoms. Succeeding kingdoms destroyed preceding kingdoms, but no kingdom will ever destroy the Son of Man's kingdom (cf. Ps. 2:6-9; 72:11; Isa. 11; Rev. 19:15-16; 20:1-6). This is a fifth kingdom, corresponding to the stone cut out without hands in chapter

---

<sup>1</sup>Baldwin, p. 154.

<sup>2</sup>Walter C. Kaiser Jr., *Toward an Old Testament Theology*, p. 246.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 91.

2 that destroys the fourth kingdom and all preceding kingdoms.

Did Jesus' coming to the earth in the first century destroy the Roman Empire? We could only say yes if we interpreted the destruction of the fourth kingdom in a non-literal way. I choose not to do this because the destruction of the previous kingdoms was literal. It seems that we should also expect that the destruction of the fourth kingdom by the fifth kingdom will be literal. Therefore the second coming of Christ must be the initiation of the fifth kingdom and the final destruction of the fourth kingdom. If this is so, then the prophetic picture that Daniel saw did not include the present age in which we live (cf. Isa. 61:1-2; Luke 4:18-19). This conclusion has seemed reasonable to some amillenarians as well as to premillenarians.<sup>1</sup>

#### **4. The interpretation of the four beasts 7:15-18**

7:15 Even though Daniel understood all kinds of visions and dreams (1:17), much of what he had just seen baffled and alarmed him (cf. 7:28).

7:16 Daniel now saw himself participating in the events of his vision. He evidently addressed his question to an angel (cf. 8:16; 9:21). He asked the angel what all the things that he had seen meant, which the angel proceeded to explain.

7:17 Daniel's interpreter explained that each of the four beasts represented a king (or kingdom, cf. v. 23). They arose from the earth's population, which is what the sea symbolized (v. 2; cf. Isa. 17:12-13; 57:20-21; Jer. 46:7-8).

"The 'four kings' obviously refer to four kingdoms, as the beasts represent both a king and a kingdom."<sup>2</sup>

7:18 The saints of the Highest One (vv. 22, 25, 27) probably refer to believers of all ages (v. 27).<sup>3</sup> J. Dwight Pentecost wrote that they are believing Jews alive when Christ returns, "not

---

<sup>1</sup>See Leupold, pp. 313-14.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 172.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid.; Campbell, p. 85.

believers of the Church age," since God did not reveal the church's existence in the Old Testament.<sup>1</sup> These saints, whoever they are, will receive the (fifth) kingdom and will possess that kingdom forever.

Believers will have a share in the Son of Man's everlasting kingdom after He establishes it. This will involve reigning with Christ (cf. Matt. 25:14-30; Luke 19:11-27; 2 Tim. 2:12; Rev. 5:10; 20:4, 6; 22:5). This kingdom will begin with the return of Christ to the earth, continue for 1,000 years on the earth, and then continue in the new heavens and new earth forever. This scenario corrects the objection of some that this kingdom cannot be millennial since the angel said it would last forever.<sup>2</sup>

"The reason for emphasizing the participation of God's people in the final kingdom seems to be that it is a literal, earthly kingdom, replacing the previous empires of men, rather than a spiritual domain, a sort of ideal kingdom of God consisting only of the Lord himself."<sup>3</sup>

#### **5. Daniel's request for interpretation of the fourth beast** **7:19-22**

- 7:19 Daniel repeated the descriptions of the fourth beast and the little horn, and in doing so mentioned four previously unrevealed details about them. The beast had claws of bronze, stressing its fierce nature.
- 7:20 The little horn was more prominent than the other horns, accounting for its ability to rise in the place of three other horns.
- 7:21 The little horn waged war with the saints and overcame them, which explains one reason for God's final judgment of him (cf. Rev. 11:7; 12:13-17; 13:7; 17:17). Daniel seems to have been

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1352. So also Fruchtenbaum, p. 263.

<sup>2</sup>E.g., Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 157.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 93.

particularly concerned about the fate of the saints whom the little horn overpowered.

- 7:22 Finally, God passed judgment in favor of His saints, further indicating the importance of the saints in God's actions. "Ancient of Days" and "Highest One" appear to be two titles of God the Father, stressing His eternity and sovereignty respectively.

#### **6. The interpretation of the fourth beast 7:23-25**

- 7:23 The interpreting angel now granted the prophet more insight into the fourth beast and particularly its little horn. Here the dual identification of the beasts with kings and kingdoms becomes indisputable. The fourth beast does not only represent a king (v. 17), but also a kingdom. The angel repeated the facts already revealed (v. 7), but he clarified that the previous description referred to a kingdom.

The phrase "the whole earth" does not necessarily mean the whole planet (cf. Luke 2:1). The Old Testament generally uses this term to refer "to the entire territory of the Near and Middle East that in any way relates to the Holy Land."<sup>1</sup> Another view is that a "one-world government under a worldwide dictator" is in view.<sup>2</sup> Later revelation seems to support the second view (Rev. 13).

- 7:24 Here it becomes clear that the 10 horns represent 10 kings. These kings will arise out of (be prominent in) the fourth kingdom. An eleventh king will arise after the 10 kings. He will be different from the other 10, probably in that he will be more aggressive. He will humble three of the 10 kings, probably by overpowering them (cf. Rev. 13:1; 17:12).

- 7:25 This eleventh king will speak out against the Most High (God). He will wear down the saints of God, evidently by persecution (cf. 2 Thess. 2:8-9; Rev. 12:13-17; 13:1-10, 16-17). He will also desire to make changes in times (the calendar?) and in

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1354.

laws. Archer recorded an interesting account of an unsuccessful attempt during the French Revolution to replace the Christian (Gregorian) calendar with a Revolutionary calendar.<sup>1</sup> Similar efforts by the Russians in more recent times have also proved ineffective.<sup>2</sup>

Someone, obviously the sovereign God, will allow this ruler to have his way for "a time, times, and half a time" (cf. 12:7). The saints "will be handed over to him" by God. Even some liberal interpreters concede that this is a period of three and one-half years (cf. 4:16; Rev. 11:2-3; 12:6; 13:5).<sup>3</sup> Young took it to stand for a period of testing and judgment in a metaphorical sense without specifying its length.<sup>4</sup> Leupold explained this period as representing "a slow beginning with modest success; then a seeming outburst of successful endeavor; then a visible collapse."<sup>5</sup>

This three and one-half year period evidently refers to the last three and one-half years before the little horn's destruction at the return of Jesus Christ. This corresponds to the "Great Tribulation," the phrase that Jesus used to describe the last half (three and one-half years) of the seven-year Tribulation (Matt. 24:21).<sup>6</sup> Whereas the first three and one-half years of the Tribulation will be bad, the second three and one-half years will be worse, because this king (Antichrist) will be persecuting believers in God.

"When the hordes from the north conquered the Roman Empire in the fifth century A.D., they did not unite to form another empire. Instead individual nations emerged out of the old Roman Empire. Some of those nations and others stemming from them have continued till the present day. The present Age, then, is the 10-

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 94. See also Kenneth Scott Latourette, *A History of Christianity*, p. 1010; Earle E. Cairns, *Christianity Through the Centuries*, p. 424.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, p. 324; Cairns, p. 477.

<sup>3</sup>E.g., Montgomery, p. 312.

<sup>4</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 162. See also Keil, pp. 242-43.

<sup>5</sup>Leupold, p. 326.

<sup>6</sup>See Tanner, pp. 458-59.



horned era of the fourth beast. (Other premillenarians [as well as some amillenarians<sup>1</sup>], however, hold that the time of the 10 horns is yet future, that the present Church Age is not seen in this vision, and that 10 kings will coexist over a future revived [or evolved] Roman Empire.)"<sup>2</sup>

"The ten-nation confederacy of the future anticipated in these prophecies would naturally be considered a revival of the Roman Empire if for no other reason than that it is portrayed as an integral part of the fourth empire."<sup>3</sup>

"Our Lord ministered on earth three and a half years, and the Antichrist shall enact his Satanic ministry for the same length of time."<sup>4</sup>

Young also believed that a literal Antichrist is in view in this passage.<sup>5</sup> Leupold did as well, but his identification of the Antichrist is a bit confusing:

"... the horn represents both the kingdom of the Antichrist as well as a personal Antichrist in whom all previous manifestations shall culminate. We also hold that in stating that the pope is the Antichrist the Lutheran Confessions were correct much as some men have derided and belittled that view. ... Though the papacy may be the outstanding manifestation of the Antichrist to date, that does not exclude other possibilities of fulfillment of this passage."<sup>6</sup>

Fruchtenbaum understood the fourth kingdom to consist of five stages: (1) the united stage, in which the Roman Empire

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Keil, p. 268.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1354.

<sup>3</sup>John F. Walvoord, "Revival of Rome," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 126:504 (October-December 1969):317-28.

<sup>4</sup>Joseph A. Seiss, *Voices from Babylon: Or the Records of Daniel the Prophet*, p. 311.

<sup>5</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 163.

<sup>6</sup>Leupold, p. 323.

existed until A.D. 364, (2) the two-division stage, from A.D. 364, when the Roman Emperor Valentinian split the empire into eastern (Byzantine) and western (Roman) parts, which continues to the present day, (3) the one-world-government stage, which is yet to come, (4) the ten-division stage, and (5) the Antichrist stage.<sup>1</sup>

## **7. The end of the fourth beast and the beginning of the everlasting kingdom 7:26-28**

7:26 The angel continued to explain that the heavenly court (v. 10) will pass judgment on the little horn, and God will remove his dominion and destroy it forever (v. 11; 2 Thess. 2:8; Rev. 19:20).

7:27 The fifth kingdom, under the Son of Man's leadership (v. 14), will then commence.

"'Under ... heaven,' shows it is a kingdom *on earth*, not in heaven."<sup>2</sup>

The angel again stressed the role that the saints will have in this kingdom. The phrase "the people of the saints of the Highest One" is unusual. This may indicate a particular group of the saints. This group is probably the Jews who, according to other Scripture, will be God's focus and the main channel of His blessing during His earthly kingdom. However, the rendering "the saints, [namely,] the people of the Most High" (NIV) is a good translation. In this case it is the saints generally who are in view, not a special group of them.<sup>3</sup>

The Son of Man's kingdom will be endless and worldwide.<sup>4</sup> The kingdom is not just the rule of the saints; it is the rule of the Highest One in which the saints participate. Note that the

---

<sup>1</sup>Fruchtenbaum, pp. 281-84.

<sup>2</sup>Jamieson, et al., p. 750.

<sup>3</sup>Cf. Barker, pp. 139-43.

<sup>4</sup>See McClain, ch. 17: "The Government in the Kingdom of Old Testament Prophecy," pp. 206-16.

kingdom is described as belonging to the Son of Man (v. 14) and to the Highest One. This implies that they are one.

"It is not difficult to see that Daniel more than almost any other author is concerned with the kingdom theme."<sup>1</sup>

7:28 Daniel marked the end of his vision, and he added that what he had seen and heard alarmed and terrified him. His pale face evidently resulted from his fear as he contemplated the severe trials and persecutions awaiting the saints. He originally kept this revelation to himself, perhaps because he realized that it might prove explosive if he announced it immediately.

There appear to be two specific sets of prophecies of the future in chapter 7, in addition to what would happen within Daniel's lifetime. First, there are prophecies that deal with coming world empires that appeared to Daniel as regular nations. Then there are the predictions about the end of the fourth kingdom and the beginning of the fifth kingdom, which are still future events from our standpoint in history. The gap between these times was undoubtedly unclear to Daniel (cf. Isa. 61:1-2; 1 Pet. 1:10-11).

In present-day Christendom (all professing Christians), it is common to hear people speak of Christians being in the kingdom of God, advancing the kingdom of God, and similar references to the present form of the kingdom of God. This is legitimate if one means by "the kingdom" the universal kingdom over which God now rules and forever has ruled from heaven. But it is not correct to equate God's present rule from heaven with His future rule on earth through the Son of Man. This messianic kingdom, we believe, will begin when Jesus Christ returns to the earth, and it is the kingdom being described in Daniel 2, by the stone cut out without hands, and in Daniel 7, by the fifth kingdom that will crush all previous earthly kingdoms. One of God's kingdoms is already present; the other is not yet: it is still to come.

Culver summarized the evidence for the premillennial understanding of chapter 7 as follows.

"(1) Messiah's kingdom follows Antichrist's appearance (here described in personal rather than institutional terms), and

---

<sup>1</sup>Merrill, "Daniel as ...," p. 225.

destruction. The person has not yet appeared. This appears to make post- and a-millennial schemes identifying the Church with the Kingdom unfeasible. (2) The kingdom of Messiah here follows the Gentile kingdoms; it is at no time contemporary with them. It must, therefore, be still future. (3) The kingdom of Christ succeeds a final form of Gentile dominion which has not yet appeared. (4) The Messianic kingdom is external in aspect here, not a kingdom in men's hearts, as Church-Kingdom theology require. (5) This kingdom is in some sense Israelitish (cf. vv. 7, 22, 25, 27 with 8:24). The 'saints' or holy people referred to here are Israel and no other. The Church is not a Jewish kingdom."<sup>1</sup>

#### COMPARISONS BETWEEN DANIEL 2 AND 7

##### Chapter 2

Nebuchadnezzar's image

Given to Nebuchadnezzar

4 kingdoms + 1 in view

A 4-part image + a stone

More general

Daniel interpreted it.

Man's viewpoint

##### Chapter 7

The four beasts

Given to Daniel

4 kingdoms + 1 in view

4 beasts + the Son of Man

More detailed

An angel interpreted it.

God's viewpoint

### III. ISRAEL IN RELATION TO THE GENTILES: GOD'S PROGRAM FOR ISRAEL CHS. 8—12

Two things signal the beginning of a new section in the book here. These two things are: a return to the Hebrew language in the original text (cf. 1:1—2:3), and an emphasis on the nation Israel. Evidently Daniel wrote the

---

<sup>1</sup>Culver, "Daniel," p. 791.

remainder of this book in Hebrew because the revelation in it concerned his people particularly. The Book of Revelation, though written in only one language originally, reveals a similar structure. After an introduction (Rev. 1—3; cf. Dan. 1), a section dealing with worldwide judgments follows (Rev. 4—11; cf. Dan. 2—7). Then the prophecies deal more specifically with Israel (Rev. 12—20; cf. Dan. 8—12).

### **A. DANIEL'S VISION OF THE RAM AND THE GOAT CH. 8**

Chapter 7 recorded the general history of "the times of the Gentiles," from the time that Nebuchadnezzar took the Jews into captivity until the Son of Man returns to the earth. Chapter 8 reveals more detail about the second (Persian) and third (Greek) kingdoms, and especially how they relate to Israel.

"Chap. 8 is the last of the book's symbolic visions; the succeeding revelations are more verbal than visual and still cryptic but not symbolic."<sup>1</sup>

#### **1. The setting of the vision 8:1-2**

- 8:1 The third year of Belshazzar was about 551 B.C., two years after Daniel received the vision in chapter 7 and about 12 years before the events of chapter 5. Daniel was then living within the kingdom of Neo-Babylonia, the first beast of chapter 7. Apparently this was not a dream combined with a vision (7:1), but just a vision. Probably it came to Daniel during the daytime. The vision that appeared to Daniel previously, noted here, refers to the one in chapter 7.
- 8:2 Evidently Daniel was in Babylon when he had this vision, but what he saw, including himself, was in Susa (Shushan, AV; cf. Neh. 1:1; Esth. 1:2, 5; 2:3, 5; Ezek. 8:3; 40:1).<sup>2</sup> Some commentators, however, believed that he was physically present in Susa. Daniel probably knew where he was in his vision because he had visited Susa. It is reasonable to assume that a man in Daniel's position in the Neo-Babylonian

---

<sup>1</sup>Goldingay, p. 208.

<sup>2</sup>Montgomery, pp. 325-26; Leupold, p. 336.

government would have visited Susa previously. Susa stood about 200 miles east of Babylon and approximately 150 miles due north of the top of the Persian Gulf.<sup>1</sup> Archaeologists discovered the Code of Hammurabi there in 1901.<sup>2</sup> The site of Susa is in modern Iran, whereas the site of Babylon is in modern Iraq.

"Elam" was the name of the Persian province in which Susa lay. After Persia overthrew Neo-Babylonia, Susa, the former capital of the Elamite kingdom, became one of the capital cities of the Persian Empire. Eighty years after Daniel had this vision, Susa became Esther's home. One hundred seven years later, it was the city from which Nehemiah departed to return to Canaan (Esth. 1:2; Neh. 1:1). The "citadel" was the palace, which housed the royal residence, and it had strong fortifications.

"The Ulai [Canal] can best be identified with an artificial canal which connected the rivers Choastes [or Choaspes, modern Kerkha] and Coprates [modern Abdizful] and ran close by Susa."<sup>3</sup>

## **2. The ram 8:3-4**

8:3 The ram (male sheep) that Daniel saw standing before the canal represented the kings of Media and Persia (v. 20). It corresponds to the lopsided bear in the chapter 7 vision (7:5). The two horns, representing power, symbolized Media and Persia, the two kingdoms that formed an alliance to create the Persian Empire. The longer horn stood for Persia, which had become more powerful in the alliance and had risen to displace Media in leadership after the two nations merged.<sup>4</sup>

The ram was an especially important symbol for the Persians. The guardian spirit of the Persian Empire was portrayed as a

---

<sup>1</sup>See the map at the beginning of these notes.

<sup>2</sup>See *Unger's Bible Dictionary*, s.v. "Shushan," by Merrill F. Unger, pp. 1022-23.

<sup>3</sup>Montgomery, p. 327.

<sup>4</sup>See Walvoord, *The Nations ...*, pp. 70-71, for a brief history of Medo-Persia, or Siegfried J. Schwantes, *A Short History of the Ancient Near East*, pp. 140-51.

ram. When the Persian king went into battle, he carried the head of a ram.<sup>1</sup> Also, in the ancient world, different zodiac signs represented various nations. Aries, the ram, stood for Persia, and Capricorn (Latin *caper*, goat, and *cornu*, horn) was Greece.<sup>2</sup>

8:4 Historically, the Persian Empire pushed its borders primarily in three directions. It went westward (into Lydia, Ionia, Thrace, and Macedonia), northward (toward the Caspian Mountains, the Oxus Valley, and Scythia), and southward (toward Babylonia, Canaan, and Egypt). Compare the three ribs in the mouth of the bear (7:5). These advances happened mainly under the leadership of Cyrus and Cambyses.<sup>3</sup> Indeed, Persia had its own way for many years and glorified itself.

"There is nothing inherently wrong about 'doing great things' [or 'as he pleased'] ... but the expression is only used in an unequivocally good sense of God (1 Sam 12:24; Ps 126:2, 3); of human beings it tends to suggest arrogance (Jer 48:26; Joel 2:20; Zeph 2:10; Ps 35:26; Ps 55:13 [12]), or at least achievement at someone else's expense (Zeph 2:8; Lam 1:9)—here achievement that presages [warns of] calamity. The expression has the foreboding ambiguity of the mouth speaking great things in 7:8, 20."<sup>4</sup>

### 3. The goat 8:5-8

8:5 The text also identifies the male goat—goats are relatives of sheep—in this vision as representing the kingdom of Greece (v. 21). History has confirmed the identification. Alexander the Great is clearly the conspicuous horn. Normally goats have two horns, so this goat was unusual. Under Alexander, the Greek armies advanced quickly from the west against Persia.

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 290.

<sup>2</sup>F. Cumont, "La Plus Ancienne geographie astrologique," *Klio* 9 (1909):263-73.

<sup>3</sup>Driver, p. 113.

<sup>4</sup>Goldingay, p. 209.

"Alexander's conquest of the entire Near and Middle East within three years stands unique in military history and is appropriately portrayed by the lightning speed of this one-horned goat. Despite the immense numerical superiority of the Persian imperial forces and their possession of military equipment like war elephants, the tactical genius of young Alexander, with his disciplined Macedonian phalanx [body of infantry], proved decisive."<sup>1</sup>

8:6-7 Due to previous attacks by the Persians, the Greeks retaliated against this enemy with unusual vengeance. Alexander won two significant battles against the Persians in Asia Minor, in 334 B.C. and in 333, first at the Granicus River, and then at Issus in Phrygia. Alexander finally subdued Persia with a victory at Gaugamela near Nineveh in 331 B.C.<sup>2</sup>

8:8 Clearly this description corresponds to that of the third beast in 7:6. Alexander "made himself exceedingly great" in two ways: First, he extended the borders of his empire, after he conquered Persia, even farther east, into modern Afghanistan and to the Indus Valley. Alexander's empire covered one and a half million square miles.<sup>3</sup> Second, he also became extremely arrogant. He regarded himself as divine and made his soldiers bow down before him. This resulted in his troops revolting.<sup>4</sup>

"Expositors, both liberal and conservative, have interpreted this verse as representing the untimely death of Alexander and the division of his empire into four major sections. Alexander, who had conquered more of the world than any previous ruler, was not able to conquer himself. Partly due to a strenuous exertion, his dissipated life, and a raging fever, Alexander died in a drunken debauch [excessive self-indulgence] at

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 97.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 183. See the map at the beginning of these notes.

<sup>3</sup>Whitcomb, p. 111.

<sup>4</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 97.



Babylon, not yet thirty-three years of age. His death left a great conquest without an effective single leader, and it took about twenty years for the empire to be successfully divided."<sup>1</sup>

It is interesting that alcohol played a significant role in the fall of Babylonia, Persia, and Greco-Macedonia. Alcohol is still a major cause of weakness and failure today.<sup>2</sup>

As mentioned in my comments on 7:6, the most probable identifications of the four horns are Lysimachus, Cassander, Seleucus, and Ptolemy (cf. 11:4).<sup>3</sup> Lysimachus ruled the northern part of Alexander's empire, Cassander the western part, Seleucus the eastern part, and Ptolemy the southern part.

#### **4. The little horn on the goat 8:9-14**

8:9 Daniel next saw a rather small horn (king, v. 23) grow out of one of the four horns (kingdoms, v. 22) that had replaced the single horn (the first king, Alexander, v. 21) on the goat (Greece, v. 21). This horn is quite clearly different from the little horn that came up among the 10 horns on the fourth beast in the previous vision (cf. 7:8, 11, 24-26).

"... the little horn arising from the third kingdom serves as a prototype [preliminary model] of the little horn of the fourth kingdom. The crisis destined to confront God's people in the time of the earlier little horn, Antiochus Epiphanes, will bear a strong similarity to the crisis that will befall them in the eschatological or final phase of the fourth kingdom in the last days (as Christ himself foresaw in the Olivet Discourse [Matt 24:15])."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 184.

<sup>2</sup>See McGee, 3:579.

<sup>3</sup>Keil, p. 293; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 169; Leupold, p. 344; Montgomery, pp. 332-33; Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 184.

<sup>4</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 99. Cf. Keil, p. 308.

This little horn grew very great to the south, the east, and "the Beautiful Land." The first problem with this description is: What is the reference point for these directions? History has identified this little horn as Antiochus IV (Epiphanes), the eighth king of the Seleucid dynasty.<sup>1</sup> He ruled Syria from 175 to 164 B.C. (cf. 1 Macc. 1:10; 6:16), and he conducted military campaigns in all of these directions (cf. 1 Macc. 1:20).<sup>2</sup> Therefore, the point of reference must be Syria.

The second problem is the identification of "the Beautiful Land." This is quite evidently a reference to Canaan (cf. 11:16, 41, 45; Jer. 3:19; Ezek. 20:6, 15). Here the vision begins to focus on the future of Israel and the Jews. Antiochus was especially vengeful against the Jews, whom he persecuted brutally.

"He is ... one of the greatest persecutors Israel has ever known."<sup>3</sup>

"In one assault on Jerusalem, 40,000 Jews were killed in three days and 10,000 more were carried into captivity."<sup>4</sup>

"This suppression came to a head in December 168 B.C., when Antiochus returned in frustration from Alexandria [in Egypt], where he had been turned back by the Roman commander Popilius Laenas, and vented his exasperation on the Jews. He sent his general, Apollonius, with twenty thousand troops under orders to seize Jerusalem on a Sabbath. There he erected an idol of Zeus and desecrated the altar by offering swine on it. This idol became known to the Jews as 'the abomination of desolation' (*hassiqqus mesomem*, 11:31), which served as a type of a future abomination that will be set up in the Jerusalem

---

<sup>1</sup>See Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 10:11:7.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 185.

<sup>3</sup>Whitcomb, p. 111. Cf. Heb. 11:35-38.

<sup>4</sup>Campbell, p. 95. The ancient sources of information about Antiochus' persecutions are 1 and 2 Maccabees and Josephus.

sanctuary to be built in the last days (cf. Christ's prediction in Matt 24:15)."<sup>1</sup>

Four years later, on December 25, 164 B.C., Judas Maccabaeus, a Jewish nationalist, led the Jews in rededicating the temple to Yahweh. This is the event that Jews have celebrated with Hanukkah ever since.

8:10 This little horn grew up to the host ("lights") of heaven, caused some of the host, also called "stars," to fall to the earth, and trampled on them. The stars probably refer to the children of Israel whom God predicted would be as numerous as the stars of heaven (Gen. 15:5; 22:17; 37:9-10; cf. Dan. 12:3; Matt. 13:43; Enoch 46:7).<sup>2</sup> They constitute one of His armies (cf. Exod. 7:4; 12:17, 51; Num. 33:1), another being the angels.

"If the world calls those men and women stars who excel in one or another department of human activity, why should not a similar statement be still more appropriate with reference to God's people?"<sup>3</sup>

Many scholars regard "the stars" and "the lights" (lit. host) of heaven as synonymous: "the host even the stars."<sup>4</sup> This is the appositional use of "and," in which "and" means "even," which is quite common in Hebrew. Alternatively the host of heaven may be angels who have some connection with the Jews (assuming that the stars refer to the Jews). The falling of the host to the earth then would picture Antiochus' victory over these angels, and his trampling the stars down would signify his persecution of the Jews. However, there is no other indication in the vision that Antiochus would control angels. So probably the stars and the host are synonymous and refer to the Jews.

8:11 By desecrating the temple, Antiochus Epiphanes (whose name means Antiochus the Illustrious One) effectively exalted

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 98.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 185; Driver, p. 116.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, p. 346.

<sup>4</sup>E.g., *ibid.*; Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1355; Archer, "Daniel," p. 99.

himself to a position of superiority over Yahweh, the Commander (or Prince; cf. v. 25) of the host (the Jews). Pentecost interpreted this verse as indicating that the horn called himself the prince of the host.<sup>1</sup> There may be some confirmation of this in history, but I have not been able to find it. Fruchtenbaum wrote that under Hellenism the "prince" of the Jews was the high priest. So what Daniel prophesied was that Antiochus would replace the high priest.<sup>2</sup> The Jews changed Antiochus' name slightly to "Epimanes," meaning "Madman."

"An attack on the place set aside for worship of God is tantamount to an attack on God Himself."<sup>3</sup>

Antiochus temporarily terminated the continual sacrifices (Heb. *tamid*) in the temple, including the daily morning and evening sacrifices, thereby depriving Yahweh of His people's worship (cf. 1 Macc. 1:44-49, RSV).<sup>4</sup>

"Apparently Antiochus did not actually tear down the temple, although eventually he desecrated it to such a point that it was hardly fit for use [cf. 1 Macc. 4:48]."<sup>5</sup>

"Its overthrowing consists in its being prevented from functioning as a place of worship of the true God."<sup>6</sup>

Some interpreters believe that this verse also previews another literal fulfillment of the destruction of the millennial temple that is still future (cf. 9:27).<sup>7</sup> Antiochus' actions anticipated what the Antichrist, the little horn of chapter 7, will do in the future (cf. 7:8, 20).

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1356.

<sup>2</sup>Fruchtenbaum, p. 301.

<sup>3</sup>Baldwin, p. 157.

<sup>4</sup>Montgomery, pp. 335-36; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 172.

<sup>5</sup>Ibid.

<sup>6</sup>Goldingay, p. 211.

<sup>7</sup>E.g., Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, pp. 186-88.

- 8:12 God would give control of the host (the Jews) to the little horn (Antiochus) because of "an offense" (or "a wrongdoing"). This may mean that God would use Antiochus as His instrument of discipline of the Jews—as He had used so many other leaders and nations in Israel's past—because of Israel's sins (cf. 1 Macc. 1:44-49, RSV).<sup>1</sup> Another view is that God would give Antiochus control of the sacrifices so that he would sin against God.<sup>2</sup> This second view has in its favor that the offense in view in verse 13 seems to be Antiochus' rather than the Jews'.

Antiochus would terminate the sacrifices, disregard the truth—he destroyed the Torah scrolls (1 Macc. 1:56)—, do as he chose, and succeed.

"Attacks on Israel are not the same as attacks on other peoples. Anti-Semitism has an extra dimension."<sup>3</sup>

This verse makes identification of "the host" as the Jews, rather than angels, almost beyond doubt.

- 8:13 The holy ones (Heb. *qados*) that Daniel heard conversing were evidently angels (cf. 4:17). Here the transgression in view seems to be that of Antiochus, not the Jews (cf. v. 12). It causes horror among the Jews because it involves desecration of the sanctuary (v. 11). The holy place is the temple, and the host is the Jews. The angel wanted to know how long the desecration of the sanctuary and the persecution of the Jews' army (or the army of Jews) would last.

- 8:14 Another angel replied, but he replied to Daniel. The answer was primarily for his comfort and for the comfort of his people: the Jews. The angel said that the desecration would last (only) 2,300 evenings and mornings. Many commentators took this as meaning 2,300 24-hour days (i.e., six years, four months, and 20 days) since the Jews described a 24-hour day as

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," pp. 100-101.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 188; Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1356.

<sup>3</sup>Goldingay, p. 220.

evening and morning (Gen. 1:5-31).<sup>1</sup> Others believed that it means a total of 2,300 evenings and 2,300 mornings, namely, 4,600 24-hour days (i.e., 12 years, 9 months, and 10 days). In this case, 2,300 evenings and mornings may mean 2,300 evening and 2,300 morning sacrifices (cf. v. 11).

Other interpreters have tried to explain these days as years, but the connection with evenings and mornings probably limits them to days.<sup>2</sup> Seventh-Day Adventists take the days as years, and believe that Jesus did not enter the holiest in heaven until A.D. 1844, 2,300 years after Cyrus issued his decree to rebuild the temple.<sup>3</sup> William Miller, the founder of Seventh-Day Adventism, predicted that Jesus would return to the earth on October 22, 1844.<sup>4</sup>

The 2,300 evenings and mornings probably describe the duration of the period when Antiochus did his worst to the temple and the Jews (within the years 167-164 B.C.).<sup>5</sup> I think 2,300 24-hour days are in view—the first view above. Perhaps the duration is given in days, rather than in months or years, in order to emphasize a long, hard duration.

The Jews followed a calendar that consisted of 30 days each month. This, of course, results in a year of 360 days, which is five and one-quarter days short of a lunar year. They made up the remaining days every few years by inserting another month.<sup>6</sup>

Some interpreters view 2,300 as a symbolic number.<sup>7</sup> The problems with this approach are essentially three: First, many

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Walvoord, p. 190; Feinberg, p. 107; Whitcomb, p. 113; Campbell, p. 96; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 174; Leupold, p. 357; Goldingay, p. 213; Ironside, p. 152; Fruchtenbaum, pp. 307-8.

<sup>2</sup>See Keil, pp. 302-308.

<sup>3</sup>See Ironside, pp. 152-53.

<sup>4</sup>Jan Karel Van Baalan, *The Chaos of Cults*, p. 205; John H. Gerstner, *The Theology of the Major Sects*, p. 21.

<sup>5</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 103; Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1358; Baldwin, p. 158; G. C. Aalders, *Daniel*, p. 165; Dyer, in *The Old ...*, p. 715; Culver, "Daniel," p. 792.

<sup>6</sup>See *The New Bible Dictionary*, "Calendar (in the OT)," by D. J. Wiseman, pp. 176-79.

<sup>7</sup>E.g., Keil, pp. 306-7; Leupold, p. 356.

other numbers in Daniel appear to be literal. Second, arriving at the symbolic meaning of this number is extremely difficult and boils down to guessing. Third, there is no indication in the book that these numbers should be understood in any other way than literally.

The temple would be restored after 2,300 days.

"Innumerable explanations have been attempted to make the twenty-three hundred days coincide with the history of Antiochus Epiphanes."<sup>1</sup>

One way to explain the fulfillment is to identify the end of the 2,300 days, and then work back. But did the angel mean that this period would end with the restoration of the holy place, or that the restoration of the holy place would follow sometime after the end of the 2,300 days? The text does not provide the answer, but the first Hanukkah, in December of 164 B.C. may be the re-consecration that the angel predicted. Alternatively, the full restoration of all the sacrifices, and the religious independence of the Jews that came a few months later may be in view. In either case, the year of restoration was probably 164 B.C., or shortly after that.

One literal view is that the 2,300 days ended with Antiochus' death in November-December of 164 B.C.<sup>2</sup> However, the text seems to identify the 2,300 days specifically with the desecration of the temple and the persecution of the Jews ("the army to be trampled"). As far as we know, Antiochus did not take over six years to do those things. Antiochus began his reign in 175 B.C., and in 169 B.C. he first entered the temple.

Some interpreters identify the beginning of Antiochus' persecution of the Jews with his initial entrance into Jerusalem in 170 B.C. Others identify it with his replacement of the Jewish high priest Onias III in 175 B.C.<sup>3</sup> Still others identify it with the murder of Onias III in 171 B.C. There was no

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 189.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., p. 190; Keil, p. 304; Wood, *A Commentary ...*, p. 219.

<sup>3</sup>Fruchtenbaum, p. 308. Cf. 2 Macc. 4:7-50.

abridgement of temple service at those early dates. Antiochus looted the temple in 170 B.C., but the abolition of the sacrifices did not begin until 167 B.C. First Maccabees 6:8 through 13 records Antiochus' comments, just before his death, about failing to destroy the Jews.

Walvoord considered 2,300 "obviously a round number."<sup>1</sup> That is, it seemed to him to be rounded off. But other scholars have questioned this assumption.

Regardless of how one solves the 2,300 evenings and mornings problem, there is general agreement among the scholars that Antiochus fulfilled this prophecy. I believe the 2,300 days was a period of persecution during his domination of the Jews.

"A persecutor of the Jews in Russia asked a Jew what he thought the outcome would be if the wave of persecutions continued. The Jew answered, 'The result will be a feast! Pharaoh tried to destroy the Jews, but the result was the Passover. Haman attempted to destroy the Jews, but the result was the Feast of Purim. Antiochus Epiphanes tried to destroy the Jews, but the result was the Feast of Dedication.'"<sup>2</sup>

## 5. The interpretation of this vision 8:15-26

### **Daniel's interpreter 8:15-19**

8:15-16 As in the previous vision (7:16), Daniel needed help to understand what he had seen. He saw someone who looked like a man standing before him. Evidently this was an angel. Daniel also heard a voice that he could understand, possibly God's, instructing the angel by name to give Daniel understanding of the vision.

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 190.

<sup>2</sup>Campbell, p. 96.



Gabriel (lit. "God Has Shown Himself Strong," "Strong Man of God," or "Man of God") is one of only two angels, and the first, that the Bible identifies by name, the other being Michael (cf. 9:21; 10:13, 21; 12:1; Luke 1:19, 26). Daniel is the only Old Testament book that identifies angels by name (but see Luke 1:19 and 26, and Jude 9). The use of Gabriel's proper name probably reflects the importance of this vision and its interpretation.

- 8:17 Gabriel's approach made Daniel so fearful that he fell flat on his face on the ground (cf. 2:46; 10:9-10, 15; Ezek. 1:28; 3:23; 44:4; Rev. 1:17). The title "son of man" stresses a person's humanity, and here, in contrast to Gabriel, it stressed Daniel's human weakness (cf. 7:13; Ezek. 2:1; et al.).

"It suggests both solemnly and encouragingly the awesomeness and the honor of an ordinary human being hearing this man of God address him ..."<sup>1</sup>

Gabriel introduced his interpretation by explaining that it concerned "the time of the end" or the end times (cf. v. 19). The vision dealt with events yet future from Daniel's viewpoint in history. "The time of the end" in Daniel is similar to future references to "the Day of the LORD" in the other prophets. It can refer to a more immediate future day, or to an eschatological (end times) day, depending on the context.

- 8:18 Daniel's response to Gabriel's awesome presence and words was that he fainted.<sup>2</sup> The Hebrew word "denotes a coma-like state of deep sleep brought about by supernatural agency, especially in connection with visionary experiences ..."<sup>3</sup> Gabriel proceeded to revive the prophet and to prepare him to receive the remainder of the interpretation of the vision that he had seen.

- 8:19 Gabriel clarified that what he was going to explain dealt with "the final period of the indignation" and "the appointed time of the end." Clearly this was future from Daniel's point in

---

<sup>1</sup>Goldingay, p. 214.

<sup>2</sup>Montgomery, p. 345.

<sup>3</sup>Goldingay, pp. 214-15. Cf. 10:9.

history. Yet does it refer to the time of Antiochus Epiphanes exclusively,<sup>1</sup> or does it refer to the end times before Jesus Christ returns,<sup>2</sup> or both? Most premillennial interpreters believe that it refers to both in some sense, either as a double fulfillment<sup>3</sup> or as a type and antitype.<sup>4</sup>

To me the difference between the double fulfillment view and the type and antitype view is only semantic. Both of these views see some fulfillment in Antiochus and some in the Antichrist. The conclusion that the prophecy relates to both times rests on what follows in verses 23 through 25, and on other uses of the phrase "the end" in Daniel (9:26; 11:6, 27, 35, 40, 45; 12:4, 6, 9, 13). Other examples of this double or typological fulfillment are Jesus fulfilling what was prophesied of Him—fulfilled to some degree earlier by Moses, the Israelites, and David.

### The identity of the ram 8:20

Gabriel identified the ram with the two horns as Media and Persia (cf. vv. 3-4), not just Media, as many liberal interpreters insist because of their second-century composition hypothesis.

### The identity of the goat 8:21-26

8:21      The goat, here further described as shaggy, represents the kingdom of Greece (cf. vv. 5-7), not Persia, as many liberals contend. The large horn on the goat is the first king of Greece, namely, Alexander the Great.

---

<sup>1</sup>Driver, pp. 99, 121; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 288.

<sup>2</sup>G. H. Pember, *The Great Prophecies of the Centuries Concerning Israel and the Gentiles*, pp. 289-90; Clarence Larkin, *The Book of Daniel*, p. 165; S. P. Tregelles, *Remarks on the Prophetic Visions in the Book of Daniel*, pp. 82-83.

<sup>3</sup>Louis T. Talbot, *The Prophecies of Daniel*, p. 143; William Kelly, *Lectures on the Book of Daniel*, p. 132; Nathaniel West, *Daniel's Great Prophecy*, p. 103; Seiss, p. 221; Pentecost, "Daniel," pp. 1359; idem, *Prophecy for Today*, pp. 82-83; idem, *Things to Come*, pp. 332-34; *The New Scofield ...*, p. 911; Campbell, p. 97.

<sup>4</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, pp. 196-200; Archer, "Daniel," pp. 104-105.

8:22 The four kingdoms that arose to replace Alexander when he died were Macedonia and Greece, Thrace and Asia Minor, Egypt and Palestine, and Syria and Persia (cf. v. 8).

"Most [conservative] expositors agree that verses 20-22 have been fulfilled completely in history in connection with the Medo-Persian and Greek empires and the four divisions following Alexander the Great. The exegetical problems arise in the passage which follows."<sup>1</sup>

8:23 Almost all scholars recognize that Antiochus Epiphanes fulfilled what Gabriel predicted in these verses (cf. 1 Macc. 1:10).<sup>2</sup> He arose in the latter period of the Diacoichi: the four kingdoms that came into existence after Alexander's death. This would happen "when the wrongdoers have run their course." Evidently a period of wickedness preceded Antiochus' appearance in Canaan. Antiochus Epiphanes was bold and deceptive.

8:24 He was powerful because God allowed him to be so: "His power will be mighty, but not by his own power." He did much damage ("destroy to an extraordinary degree"), especially to Jerusalem and the temple. He became prosperous and carried out his objectives ("be successful and do as he pleases"). Antiochus also destroyed powerful people ("will destroy mighty men"), including the Jewish high priest, as well as many Jews ("and the holy people").

8:25 He fooled many people with his shrewdness, some of whom were unsuspecting. He successfully deceived many people. He exalted himself ("make himself great in his own mind"), even to the extent of minting coins that bore his image and the inscription "God manifest" (Gr. *theos epiphanes*). He also opposed God, the "Prince of princes."

Many students of verses 23 through 25 have noticed striking similarities between Antiochus Epiphanes as described here

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 197.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1359.

and another political leader predicted to appear in the future (cf. 7:8, 11, 21-22, 24-26; 9:27; 11:36-45; 12:11; Matt. 24:5, 23-24, 26; Mark 13:6, 21-22; Luke 21:8; 2 Thess 2:3-12; 1 John 2:18, 22; 4:3; 2 John 7; Rev. 13:1-10; 19:20; 20:10). Therefore they, and I, conclude that these verses are prophetic of the Antichrist as well as of Antiochus.

Another interpretation is that this is a prophecy of the Antichrist alone, with no reference to Antiochus. Whitcomb argued for the end-time fulfillment being the king of the north (11:45) rather than Antichrist.<sup>1</sup> It seems that Antiochus did on a smaller scale what Antichrist will do on a larger one. Apparently in the much later period of the rule of these kings, namely, the end times, wrongdoers will have run their course even more completely. The Antichrist will oppose the Prince of princes, God the Son, who will break him without human agency (v. 25; Ps. 2; Rev. 19:19-20).

8:26 Another title for this vision that Gabriel used is "the vision of the evenings and mornings" (cf. v. 14). This phrase describes the particular period when this prediction would find fulfillment, perhaps 167-164 B.C. Daniel needed to "seal up the vision" (NIV) in the sense of recording, finishing, and preserving it, not in the sense of making it "secret" (NASB, cf. 7:28; 12:9). It pertained to many days in the future, namely, four centuries later, as well as beyond then. The NIV translation "distant future" unfortunately implies that it pertains only to the distant future from our point in history.

## **6. The result of this vision 8:27**

Like we sometimes feel exhausted after a night's sleep in which we have been very active in a dream, so Daniel felt worn out by what he had seen in his vision. This experience so drained him of energy that he was sick for several days and could not work. Probably the knowledge that severe persecution was in store for "the holy people" (v. 24) distressed him greatly.

---

<sup>1</sup>Whitcomb, pp. 118.

"There is a price to be paid in physical terms for spiritual revelation."<sup>1</sup>

In spite of Gabriel's interpretation, there were things that Daniel still did not understand about this vision (cf. 1 Pet. 1:10-12; Luke 18:34). He had to live with unanswered questions, since God did not provide further help for him. The progress of history and later revelation have thrown more light on this revelation.

The emphasis in this chapter is on the little horn, as the emphasis in chapter 7 was on the little horn, though two different individuals (little horns) are in view. The little horn in chapter 7 is Antichrist, and the little horn in chapter 8 is Antiochus, in the short range, and Antichrist, in the long range. Chapter 8 focuses on the Jews as the target of Antiochus' antagonism, in the short range. Chapter 7 focuses on believers generally as the target of Antichrist's opposition. However, there is some indication in both chapters that, in the long range, the Jews will be the objects of special persecution.

"The times of the Gentiles, although not entirely a period of persecution of Israel, often resulted in great trial to them. Of the four great world empires anticipated by Daniel, only the Persian empire was relatively kind to the Jew. As Christ Himself indicated in Luke 21:24, the times of the Gentiles is characterized by the treading down of Jerusalem, and the subjugation and persecution of the people of Israel."<sup>2</sup>

THE VISIONS OF DANIEL 2, 7, AND 8			
Chapter 2	Chapter 7	Chapter 8	
<i>Metals</i>	<i>Animals</i>	<i>Animals</i>	<i>Nations</i>
Gold	Winged lion		Neo-Babylonia
Silver	Lopsided bear	Ram	Persia
Bronze	Winged leopard	Goat	Greece

<sup>1</sup>Baldwin, p. 161.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, pp.199-200.

Iron Iron and clay	Unique beast	Rome
-----------------------	--------------	------

## **B. DANIEL'S VISION OF THE 70 SEVENS CH. 9**

This chapter records a third vision that Daniel received (cf. chs. 7, 8). The vision itself occupies only a small part of this chapter (vv. 24-27), but the verses that precede it prepare for it and connect with it.

"In many respects, this is the high point of the book of Daniel. Although previously Gentile history and prophecy recorded in Daniel was related to the people of Israel, the ninth chapter specifically takes up prophecy as it applies to the chosen people."<sup>1</sup>

"Unless the ninth chapter of the book of Daniel is properly understood, the great prophetic discourse of our Lord Jesus Christ in Matthew 24—25, Mark 13, and Luke 21 will be misunderstood, as will the greater portion of the book of Revelation."<sup>2</sup>

"This prophecy is unique in Scripture in that it actually sets up a sort of time schedule of coming events. The nearest approach to it is Jeremiah's prophecy of seventy years ..."<sup>3</sup>

### **1. Jeremiah's prophecy of Jerusalem's restoration and Daniel's response 9:1-3**

9:1      What Daniel did and saw in this chapter dates from 539 B.C., the first year of Darius the Mede's (Gobryus') rule as king over the Persian province of Babylon.<sup>4</sup> Belshazzar's feast and the fall of Babylon to Cyrus, in chapter 5, occurred earlier the same year. Daniel's vision of the ram and the goat, in chapter 8, took place 12 years earlier, in 551 B.C. We cannot date Daniel's

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., p. 201.

<sup>2</sup>Feinberg, p. 117.

<sup>3</sup>Culver, "Daniel," p. 792.

<sup>4</sup>See my comments on 5:31 and 6:1 for explanation of the identity of Darius the Mede.

experience in the lions' den (ch. 6). That may have happened either before or after the events recorded here.

The father (or ancestor) of Darius the Mede, Ahasuerus, cannot be the same person as the Ahasuerus who succeeded Cyrus the Great on the throne of the Persian Empire (Esth. 1:1). That Ahasuerus ruled from 486 to 464 B.C.

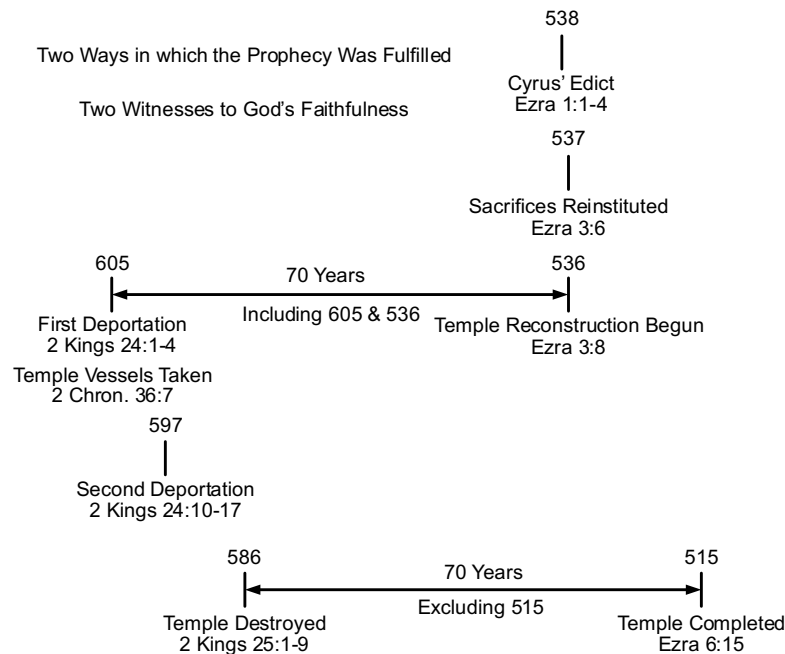
9:2      Somehow Daniel had obtained a copy of Jeremiah's prediction of the length of Jerusalem's desolation (cf. Jer. 36:23, 28). Jeremiah had revealed that the city would lie in ruins for 70 years and then God would destroy Babylonia (Jer. 25:11-12; 29:10-14; cf. 2 Chron. 36:21). Daniel received this vision about 52 years after Nebuchadnezzar had deported the first group of exiles, including himself, in 605 B.C. Nebuchadnezzar destroyed the temple and Jerusalem in 586 B.C.

It is interesting, in passing, that those interpreters who believe the numbers prophesied in the Book of Daniel should be taken symbolically, not literally, take the number of years prophesied in the Book of Jeremiah literally. They have to, since the Babylonian Captivity lasted for 70 literal years.

The specific period of desolation in verse 2 probably refers to 586-515 B.C., since "the desolations of Jerusalem" are in view. Daniel may also have been aware of Isaiah's prophecy that God would raise up a king named Cyrus, who would order the rebuilding of Jerusalem and the temple (Isa. 44:28; cf. 45:1-2, 4, 13). But there is no mention of this in the Book of Daniel.

Daniel interpreted literally the 70 years that Jeremiah predicted. As he saw the end of this period approaching, he prayed for the restoration of his people. Daniel's understanding of a literal fulfillment of numbers in prophecy helps us know how we should understand at least some of them. Notice also that he regarded Jeremiah's prophecy as "the word of the LORD [Yahweh]."

The Fulfillment of Jeremiah's Prophecy of 70 Years of Captivity  
(Jer. 25:11-12; 29:10)



9:3

Jeremiah had revealed that God would restore His people to their land when they prayed to Him wholeheartedly (Jer. 29:12-14). This revelation evidently prompted Daniel to pray the prayer that follows (vv. 3-19). Daniel's prayer fulfills what Solomon anticipated in his prayer at the dedication of the temple (cf. 1 Kings 8:33-36). Daniel did not regard prayer as unnecessary in view of the certainty of the fulfillment of Jeremiah's prophecy. He viewed prayer properly, namely, as one means that God uses to accomplish His will in human history (cf. 6:10). Through prayer we become partners with God in bringing His will to pass in the world. Daniel's behavior, as well as his words, expressed the genuineness of his sorrow.

"These verses show Daniel as a diligent student of Scripture who built his prayer life on the Word of God."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 107.



"This verse teaches that biblical prophecy should bring us to our knees, as it did Daniel."<sup>1</sup>

"While God honors the briefest of prayers, as the experience of Nehemiah 2:4 indicates, effective prayer requires faith in the Word of God, proper attitude of mind and heart, privacy, and unhurried confession and petition. Daniel's humility, reverence, and earnestness are the hallmarks of effective prayer."<sup>2</sup>

## **2. Daniel's prayer of confession 9:4-14**

Daniel's prayer (vv. 4-19) began with confession of sin and guilt (vv. 4-14), and it ended with a plea for mercy and restoration (vv. 15-19). The confession part of the prayer (vv. 4-14) may be divided into two parts: the people's sin (vv. 4-10), and God's punishment (vv. 11-14).

### **The people's sin 9:4-10**

9:4 This is only the second time in the book that Daniel used the name "Yahweh" for God (cf. vv. 2, 8, 10, 13, 14, 20). He also addressed God as "Adonai" (Master) in verses 4 and 7. It is natural that he would do this, since this chapter describes the most intimate contact that Daniel enjoyed with his God, namely, through Bible study and prayer. He addressed his petition to the covenant-keeping God of Israel: Yahweh. Daniel stressed God's transcendence and His faithfulness (loyal love, Heb. *hesed*) to Israel in this salutation.

9:5-6 He then proceeded to point out that, in contrast to Yahweh's faithfulness to Israel, Israel had been unfaithful to Him. The prophet identified with his people. Personally he had been faithful to God. Yet, since he was an Israelite, he partook of the blessings and curses that God sent his nation for her obedience and disobedience (cf. Deut. 28:48-57, 64-68).

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, p. 119.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 206.

"What made Daniel one of God's greatest saints was not his sinlessness but his sensitivity to the true depth of his sin."<sup>1</sup>

Daniel listed several of Israel's sins first: positive transgressions (v. 5) and then negative omissions (v. 6). Note the progression in the description of sin in verse 5. Evidently Daniel wanted to confess all the nation's sins of every kind to their full extent.<sup>2</sup> Especially sinful was the fact that all classes within Israel had disregarded God's words to them through His prophets (cf. 2 Chron. 30:10). To disregard God's Word is "the beginning of all moral disorders."<sup>3</sup>

9:7-8 Daniel proceeded to contrast the righteousness that belongs to God (v. 7), with the guilt and shame that belonged to His people because they had sinned against Him (v. 8).

9:9-10 He also contrasted God's forgiveness and compassion with Israel's rebellion (v. 9). Daniel focused again on Israel's great sin of disregarding God's words to her (v. 10).

"Nothing indeed more plainly exhibits the Spirit of Christ than this complete identification with the sorrowful condition of God's people through their sins."<sup>4</sup>

#### **God's punishment 9:11-14**

9:11-12 All of this sin resulted in Israel's humiliation among the Gentile nations. God had poured out curses on His people because of their sins (v. 11b). He had done what He had promised that He would do if Israel departed from Him (v. 12; cf. Deut. 28:15-68).

9:13-14 Moses had warned the Israelites about departing from God, yet His people had not sought His favor by repenting. Therefore,

---

<sup>1</sup>Whitcomb, p. 123.

<sup>2</sup>Stuart, p. 258.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, p. 384.

<sup>4</sup>Dennett, p. 137.

calamity had descended on them, since Yahweh is righteous in all His deeds.

In this section of his prayer, the prophet glorified God for dealing justly with His people who, Daniel acknowledged, deserved all the punishment that they had received.

"Suffering can involve punishment, but it usually is about learning the lessons God has for his people."<sup>1</sup>

"Prayer can only be accepted when joined with the desire to *turn* from sin to God (Ps. 66:18; Prov. 28:9)."<sup>2</sup>

### **3. Daniel's petition for restoration 9:15-19**

Having laid a foundation for appeal with his confession (vv. 4-14), Daniel proceeded to petition God to restore His people to the Promised Land.

9:15 He first referred to the Exodus, as a former demonstration of God's power and faithfulness for His people, when they found themselves in a situation similar to that of the Babylonian exiles. Again Daniel stressed God's reputation and Israel's unworthiness, which clarified the basis for his appeal (cf. vv. 4-5).

"The deliverance of the people of Israel from Egypt is, in many respects, the Old Testament standard illustration of the power of God and His ability to deliver His people. By contrast in the New Testament, the resurrection of Jesus Christ is God's standard of power (Eph 1:19-20). In the future millennial reign of Christ, the standard of power will be the regathering of Israel and their restoration to the land (Jer 16:14-15)."<sup>3</sup>

9:16-17 Now the prophet appealed to God as Adonai, stressing His sovereignty over His people, and as Elohim, the strong One. As God had righteously brought discipline on Israel for her past

---

<sup>1</sup>Bramer, p. 158.

<sup>2</sup>Jamieson, et al., p. 754.

<sup>3</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 211.

sins, Daniel asked Him to bring restoration righteously, since He had promised it too. The answer would primarily glorify God, and secondarily, it would bless His people.

9:18-19 Daniel appealed repeatedly to God to hear and answer his prayer, not because the Israelites deserved it, but because God is compassionate (cf. Exod. 32:12-14). It is interesting that Daniel did not tell God what to do. Instead he asked God to hear, to see, and to act. This is a humble approach that does not dictate to God but leaves the answer with Him. This magnificent prayer builds to an emotional, positive, logical climax in verse 19.

#### 4. God's response to Daniel's prayer 9:20-23

God began responding to Daniel's prayer as soon as he began praying (cf. v. 19; Luke 11:10-13). Clearly the prayer recorded in the preceding verses is only a summary of what the prophet prayed, since he prayed long and hard (v. 21).

9:20-21 Daniel again saw Gabriel, whom he had met previously (8:16). He was obviously an angel, so the description "the man Gabriel" is an anthropomorphism and a play on words. It probably means "the servant, the strong one of the strong God." The Hebrew word *ish* (man) often appears as a description of a servant.<sup>1</sup> Gabriel evidently looked like a man to Daniel.

"Note that the term *ha'is* ('the man') does not signify 'man' in contradistinction to angels or other spiritual powers residing in heaven; that would have been *'adam* or *'enos* in Hebrew. It rather indicates that this mighty archangel had appeared in a humanlike form and had spoken to Daniel intelligibly as one man speaks to another [cf. Luke 24:4; Acts 1:10]."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 400.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 111.

Evidently Daniel had become weary because of his praying and fasting.<sup>1</sup> The time of the evening offering was 3:00 p.m. The Jews were not able to offer the regular morning and evening sacrifices after the Babylonians destroyed their temple. But pious Jews such as Daniel still prayed at these customary times (cf. 6:10).

9:22-23 Daniel's concern for God's reputation (vv. 4-14) doubtless made him special to God (v. 23). The revelation that God had sent Gabriel to convey constituted an answer to Daniel's prayer. It revealed what would happen to the Jews.

"For the first time in the book Daniel's initiative occasions a revelation."<sup>2</sup>

"As the apocalyptic prophet of the New Testament was 'the disciple whom Jesus loved,' so the apocalyptic prophet of the Old Testament was 'greatly beloved' of God."<sup>3</sup>

## **5. The revelation of Israel's future in 70 sevens 9:24-27**

"In the concluding four verses of Daniel 9, one of the most important prophecies of the Old Testament is contained. The prophecy as a whole is presented in verse 24. The first sixty-nine sevens is described in verse 25. The events between the sixty-ninth seventh [*sic*, seven] and the seventieth seventh [*sic*, seven] are detailed in verse 26. The final period of the seventieth seventh [*sic*, seven] is described in verse 27."<sup>4</sup>

"The interpretations may be divided into three principal classes. 1. Most of the church fathers and the older orthodox interpreters find prophesied here the appearance of Christ in the flesh, His death, and the destruction of Jerusalem by the Romans. 2. The majority of the modern interpreters, on the

---

<sup>1</sup>See Bill Thrasher, *A Journey to Victorious Praying*, pp. 141-60, for a good discussion of fasting.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, p. 162.

<sup>3</sup>Jamieson, et al., p. 754.

<sup>4</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 216.

other hand, refer the whole passage to the time of Antiochus Epiphanes. 3. Finally, some of the church fathers and several modern theologians have interpreted the prophecy eschatologically, as an announcement of the development of the kingdom of God from the end of the exile on to the perfecting of the kingdom by the second coming of Christ at the end of the days."<sup>1</sup>

I believe that the third of these interpretations is the correct one—with one alteration. I would end the quotation with "the second coming of Christ," because it will not occur at the end of the days, if "the end of the days" means the end of the world. A 1,000-year millennium will occur between these events. Renald Showers demonstrated that these verses imply a pretribulation Rapture of the church.<sup>2</sup>

"Daniel's prophecy of the seventy weeks (vv. 24-27) provides the chronological frame for Messianic prediction from Daniel to the establishment of the kingdom on earth and also a key to its interpretation."<sup>3</sup>

"Probably no single prophetic utterance is more crucial in the fields of Biblical Interpretation, Apologetics, and Eschatology."<sup>4</sup>

9:24      The Hebrew word translated "weeks" (*shabu'im*) literally means "units of seven." It can refer to seven days (Gen. 29:27-28) or seven years, which verses 26 and 27 will show. The Jews observed a seven-year celebration (the sabbatical year), as well as a seven-day celebration (the Sabbath). Most scholars believe that this word ("weeks," "sevens," "units of seven") here represents seven-year periods.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 336. He cited, in a footnote, some advocates of each view. See Tanner, pp. 560-71, for a survey of seven views regarding the seventy weeks.

<sup>2</sup>Renald E. Showers, *Maranatha: Our Lord, Come! A Definitive Study of the Rapture of the Church*, pp. 230-44. See also Alva J. McClain, *Daniel's Prophecies of the Seventy Weeks*, pp. 53-55.

<sup>3</sup>*The New Scofield ...*, p. 913.

<sup>4</sup>McClain, *Daniel's Prophecies ...*, p. 9.

<sup>5</sup>See Tanner, pp. 545-57.

Daniel had been thinking of God's program for Israel in terms of years. He had read Jeremiah's prophecy that the exile would last 70 years (vv. 1-2). It would have been normal then for him to interpret these sevens as years.<sup>1</sup> Furthermore, the fulfillment of the first 69 sevens shows that these "sevens" are years. In addition, the last half of the seventieth seven is described elsewhere as consisting of three and one-half years, or 42 months, or 1,260 days.<sup>2</sup>

Seventy seven-year periods totals 490 years. As Jerusalem was suffering under the hand of Gentiles for 70 years (v. 2), so the Jews and Jerusalem would suffer under the hand of Gentiles for 490 years. "Your people" and "your holy city" are obvious references to the Jews and Jerusalem (cf. vv. 7, 11, 20). They do not refer to the church, which is a distinct entity from Israel (cf. 1 Cor. 10:32). However, as the following verses clarify, these will not be uninterrupted years. Similarly, Israel's rule by Davidic monarchs has suffered interruption: the last king being Zedekiah—and the next, Messiah.

God had decreed these years. He had ordained them, and they were as certain to come as anything else that God had foreordained. This verse states that the purpose for God decreeing this period is six-fold: First, it will end rebellion against Him. Second, it will end human failure to obey God. Third, it will provide time for atonement that will cover human wickedness. Fourth, it will inaugurate a new society in which righteousness prevails. Fifth, it will bring in the fulfillment of the vision that God has for the earth. Sixth, it will result in the anointing of the most holy, which is probably a reference to a new and more glorious temple (cf. Ezek. 40—48).

God has already achieved some of these goals, specifically, the third one, and to some extent the first two. However, other

---

<sup>1</sup>For defense of this view based on additional internal evidence in the Book of Daniel, see Otto Zöckler, "The Book of the Prophet Daniel," in Lange's *Commentary on the Holy Scriptures*, 7:2:194. See also Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1361; and *The New Scofield ...*, p. 913.

<sup>2</sup>For an example of how interpreting the numbers in this passage as both symbolic and literal leads to confusion, see Waltke, *An Old ...*, pp. 549-50.

goals have not yet been fulfilled. Therefore it is reasonable to look for a future fulfillment from our perspective in history.<sup>1</sup>

"By the time these 490 years run their course, God will have completed six things for Israel. The first three have to do with sin, and the second three with the kingdom. The basis for the first three was provided in the work of Christ on the cross, but all six will be realized by Israel at the Second Advent of Christ."<sup>2</sup>

Young, an amillennialist, believed that Christ completed all six things for the church, by which he meant all believers of all time, not Israel, at His first coming.<sup>3</sup> Leupold, also an amillennialist, believed that they will be completed by the return of Christ, which event he believed would end the world.<sup>4</sup>

"This prophecy, it must be noted, concerns three deliverances. Daniel was greatly burdened about an early deliverance of the Jews from Babylon to return to Jerusalem. God was also interested in their deliverance from bondage to sin (at Christ's first advent) and in the final deliverance of the Jews from oppression (at Christ's second coming) ..."<sup>5</sup>

"This vs. is a Divine revelation of the fact that a definite period of time has been decreed for the accomplishment of all that which is necessary for the true restoration of God's people [by which he meant all believers of all time, not Israel] from bondage."<sup>6</sup>

9:25      There are four decrees concerning the rebuilding of Jerusalem that Scripture records: The first was Cyrus' decree to rebuild

---

<sup>1</sup>Cf. Barker, pp. 143-46.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1361.

<sup>3</sup>Young, *The Prophecy* ..., p. 201.

<sup>4</sup>Leupold, p. 413.

<sup>5</sup>Campbell, p. 108. See also Wood, *A Commentary* ..., p. 244.

<sup>6</sup>Young, *The Prophecy* ..., p. 195.



the temple in 538 B.C. (2 Chron. 36:22-23; Ezra 1:1-4; 6:2-5).<sup>1</sup> The second was Darius I's decree in 512 B.C., which confirmed Cyrus' earlier one (Ezra 6:1, 6-12). The third was Artaxerxes' decree in 457 B.C. (Ezra 7:11-26).<sup>2</sup> The fourth was Artaxerxes' decree authorizing Nehemiah to rebuild Jerusalem in 444 B.C. (Neh. 2:1-8). Chisholm also suggested a fifth possibility, namely, that the decree in view was Jeremiah's prophecy that Jerusalem would be rebuilt (Jer. 30:18), which he dated sometime between 597 and 586 B.C. But this was not a decree. He took the seventy weeks as symbolic of completeness.<sup>3</sup>

The first two of these decrees authorized the rebuilding of the temple, and the third provided for animal sacrifices in the temple. Only the fourth one, in 444 B.C., gave the Jews permission to rebuild Jerusalem, and it seems to be the one in view here. The Jews encountered opposition as they sought to rebuild and refortify their ancient capital, as the Book of Nehemiah records. The date 444 B.C., then, probably marks the beginning of this 490-year period.<sup>4</sup>

Seven sevens plus sixty-two sevens equals 483 sevens or years. Gabriel predicted that after 483 years Messiah would be cut off.<sup>5</sup> Detailed chronological studies have been done that show that Jesus Christ's death occurred then. If one calculates 483 years from 444 B.C., one might conclude that the date for Messiah being cut off is A.D. 39. However, both the Jews and the Babylonians observed years of 360, rather than 365

---

<sup>1</sup>For defense of the view that this date is meant, see David Larson, "Approximate Fulfillment as the Key to Reconsidering the Decree of Cyrus as the Beginning Point of Daniel's 70 Weeks," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 65:3 (September 2022):491-507.

<sup>2</sup>See William H. Shea, "Supplementary Evidence in Support of 457 B.C. as the Starting Date for the 2300 Day-Years of Daniel 8:14," *Journal of the Adventist Theological Society* 12:1 (Spring 2001):89-96; and Rodger C. Young, "The Theological Problem Presented by the Exactness of Daniel's 70 Weeks," *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 65:3 (September 2022):473-89.

<sup>3</sup>Chisholm, pp. 314-17.

<sup>4</sup>Anderson, p. 66, dated this decree at 445 B.C.

<sup>5</sup>For three rabbinic interpretations of verses 24 through 27, see Fruchtenbaum, pp. 352-58.

days per year. If one calculates the number of days involved in the Jewish and Babylonian calendar year, the year Messiah would be cut off comes out to be A.D. 33.

Several scholars have calculated that the day Jesus entered Jerusalem in His triumphal entry was precisely the last day of this long period.<sup>1</sup> The Triumphal Entry was significant because it was the last public event during Jesus' first advent that demonstrated a positive popular reaction to Him. After it, the nation of Israel rejected Him (cut Him off, v. 26). Whether or not the chronology is that exact, almost all conservative expositors agree that the death of Christ is in view and that it occurred at the end of the sixty-ninth week. Tanner showed that there was a strong consensus among the early Church fathers that this passage is messianic, though they varied greatly in their understanding of the details.<sup>2</sup>

Even Young, who is a representative amillennialist, supported this basic chronology, though he held that the numbers seven and 62 were symbolic and not literal numbers. He believed that the decree in verse 24 was Cyrus' decree of 538 B.C., that the destruction of Jerusalem in A.D. 70 occurred toward the end of the 70<sup>th</sup> week, and that the prince to come (v. 26) was the Roman General Titus.<sup>3</sup>

"Thus, in Daniel's prophecy, while the King's arrival is definitely clocked, the establishment of His [earthly] Kingdom is left uncertain chronologically."<sup>4</sup>

What happened after 49 years that justifies breaking the period of 69 weeks into two parts? Perhaps it was the end of the Old Testament revelation through the writing prophets.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., pp. 127-28; McClain, *Daniel's Prophecies ...*, pp. 25-26; H. W. Hoehner, "Daniel's Seventy Weeks and New Testament Chronology," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 132:525 (January-March 1975):64. See also Baxter, 4:83-86.

<sup>2</sup>J. Paul Tanner, "Is Daniel's Seventy-Weeks Prophecy Messianic?" *Bibliotheca Sacra* 166:662 (April-June 2009):181-200.

<sup>3</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, pp. 191-206, 220-21.

<sup>4</sup>McClain, *The Greatness ...*, p. 174.

<sup>5</sup>McGee, 3:588.

Another view, which I prefer, is that it took seven weeks (49 years) to clear out all the debris from Jerusalem and to restore it fully as a thriving city with streets and moat.<sup>1</sup>

"This perfectly describes the work of Nehemiah and under what difficult circumstances he performed his tasks."<sup>2</sup>

The English Standard Version translators followed the reading of an inferior text at this point. According to this translation, which I do not recommend here (though the ESV is a very good translation in general), the sequence of events is: the order to restore Jerusalem, seven years, the coming of the prince, the rebuilding of Jerusalem in 62 weeks, and then the cutting off of the prince.

The reference to Jerusalem being rebuilt "with plaza and moat" (NASB), or "with streets and a trench" (NIV), or "with streets and conduits" (NEB), has confused some readers, since Jerusalem never had a typical moat, trench, or conduit around it.<sup>3</sup> However, the valleys of Hinnom and Kidron, on Jerusalem's east, south and west sides, resemble a moat or trench around most of the city. In heavy rains they did and still do carry water and function as a moat or conduit. There are dry moats as well as wet moats, and Jerusalem's "moat" was normally dry.

9:26 Most Christian interpreters have taken the cutting off of Messiah as a reference to Jesus Christ's death. He had nothing then in a very real sense.

The "prince who is to come" seems to be a different person from the Messiah. A legitimate translation is "the people of a ruler who will come."<sup>4</sup> His people, not he himself, would destroy

---

<sup>1</sup>J. N. Darby, *Synopsis of the Books of the Bible*, 2:493; Dennett, p. 148; Walvoord, *Daniel* ..., p. 227; Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1363; Campbell, p. 110; Ironside, p. 165; J. Randall Price, "Prophetic Postponement in Daniel 9 and Other Texts," in *Issues in Dispensationalism*, pp. 151-52.

<sup>2</sup>Feinberg, p. 130.

<sup>3</sup>NEB refers to *The New English Bible with the Apocrypha*.

<sup>4</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 116.

the city. This happened in A.D. 70 when the Roman army under Titus leveled Jerusalem.

The "prince who is to come," however, is evidently not Titus, but a future ruler, namely, the Antichrist (7:8). Titus made no covenant with the Jews (v. 27). However, Titus did initially what this prince will do ultimately. Jerusalem did not end because of a literal flood of water in Titus' day, but Roman soldiers overwhelmed it like a flood (cf. 11:10, 22, 26, 40; Isa. 8:8). War preceded the destruction. Gabriel announced that God had determined the city's desolation (cf. Matt. 24:7-22).

Some interpreters believe that the end of this verse describes conditions that have followed Titus' destruction and continue even today.<sup>1</sup> Others think it only describes what Titus did.<sup>2</sup> "It's end" refers to the destruction of the city, but "the end" could refer to the end of the destruction of the city or to the end of Israel's desolations generally. I prefer the former view.

9:27

"In contrast to the rather clear fulfillment of verses 25-26, verse 27 is an enigma as far as history is concerned; and only futuristic interpretation allows any literal fulfillment."<sup>3</sup>

"Between the sixty-ninth and the seventieth weeks we have a Great Parenthesis which has now lasted over nineteen hundred years."<sup>4</sup>

The nearest antecedent of "he" is "the prince who is to come" (v. 26). Titus made no covenant with Israel, so who is in view? Apparently a future ruler of the revived or evolved Roman Empire, the little horn of chapter 7, is in view. This seems preferable to taking the antecedent of "he" as Messiah, since Jesus Christ did not do the things predicted of the prince here. Young held that Christ is the prince, and He fulfilled what Daniel predicted, in that He put the covenant of grace into effect at

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1364; Archer, "Daniel," p. 117.

<sup>2</sup>E.g., Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 231.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid.

<sup>4</sup>Harry A. Ironside, *The Great Parenthesis*, p. 23.

the time of His death, and abolished the sacrifices of the old Mosaic dispensation.<sup>1</sup>

If the little horn of chapter 7 is in view here, as seems preferable, this means that the seventieth week does not follow the sixty-ninth week immediately. Such a break in prophetic chronology has precedent in the predictions of Messiah's first and second advents (e.g., Isa. 61:1-2). Another evidence of a break between the sixty-ninth and seventieth weeks is the fact that there was a 37-year gap, between Messiah's cutting off in A.D. 33, and the destruction of Jerusalem in A.D. 70. Yet Daniel presented both of these events as after the sixty-ninth week, and before the seventieth week. Thus there must be a break in the chronology after the sixty-ninth week.<sup>2</sup>

This future ruler, according to Gabriel, will make a covenant with "the many" for one week (seven years). "The many" evidently refers to Daniel's people (v. 24), ethnic Jews (cf. 11:39; 12:2), possibly the leadership of Israel. After three and one-half years this Antichrist will terminate the sacrifices and offerings that he permitted these Jews to offer. Their ability to offer these sacrifices indicates that they will be back in the land worshipping at a rebuilt temple.<sup>3</sup>

"The wing of abominations [detestable things]" may be a reference to a wing of the temple that is particularly abominable because of idolatry, possibly the pinnacle or summit of the temple.<sup>4</sup> Another interpretation takes "wing" figuratively and sees Antichrist descending vulture-like on his prey.<sup>5</sup> Perhaps the simplest explanation is to take "on the wing of" in the sense of "with." In other words, Antichrist will accompany these abominations like a wing accompanies a bird: he will be part and parcel with them. Apparently the prince will

---

<sup>1</sup>Young, *The Prophecy* ..., pp. 213-17, 220-21.

<sup>2</sup>See McClain, *Daniel's Prophecies* ..., pp. 31-45, for additional proofs of a gap.

<sup>3</sup>See Charles H. Dyer, *World News and Bible Prophecy*, ch. 5: "The Third Temple," pp. 71-84.

<sup>4</sup>Young, *The Prophecy* ..., p. 218; Whitcomb, p. 134.

<sup>5</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 118.

appear in the Jerusalem temple when he ends the sacrifices. Another possibility is that Antichrist will have an image of himself set up on the top of the temple (cf. Rev. 13:14-15).<sup>1</sup>

Daniel 12:11 refers to a future stopping of the Jewish sacrifices forty-two months before Messiah returns to the earth. Revelation 13:4 through 7 also describes this future ruler in harmony with what Gabriel revealed here. Jesus warned of him too, in Matthew 24:15 through 28, as did the Apostle Paul, in 2 Thessalonians 2:3 and 4, and the Apostle John, in 1 John 2:18. The complete destruction decreed by God and poured out on this prince will come, according to these passages, when Messiah returns to the earth.<sup>2</sup>

Students of this passage who do not take this verse as predicting future events usually adopt one of the following interpretations.<sup>3</sup> Liberal commentators believe that the events in the seventieth seven, as well as those in the preceding sixty-nine sevens, happened in a loose sense after the Maccabean persecution of the second century B.C.<sup>4</sup> Orthodox Jewish scholars usually take the destruction of Jerusalem in A.D. 70 as the fulfillment of this verse.

Many amillennialists understand the seventieth week to represent what has happened since Jesus Christ's first advent, and what will continue until His second advent.<sup>5</sup> Some amillennialists take the seventieth seven as seven literal years beginning with Jesus' public ministry and ending about three and one-half years after His death.<sup>6</sup> Dwight Pentecost articulated the standard premillennial, pretribulational interpretation:

---

<sup>1</sup>Arnold G. Fruchtenbaum, *The Book of Isaiah*, p. 304.

<sup>2</sup>See Craig A. Blasing, "The Day of the Lord and the Seventieth Week of Daniel," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 169:674 (April-June 2012):131-42.

<sup>3</sup>See also Baldwin's additional note on some interpretations of the seventy sevens, pp. 172-78.

<sup>4</sup>E.g., Montgomery, pp. 400-401; Collins, p. 357-58.

<sup>5</sup>E.g., Young, *The Prophecy ...*, pp. 208-209; Leupold, pp. 431-40.

<sup>6</sup>E.g., Philip Mauro, *The Seventy Weeks and the Great Tribulation*, pp. 70-71. Cf. Henry, p. 1099.

"This seven-year period will begin after the Rapture of the church (which will consummate God's program in this present Age). The 70th 'seven' will continue till the return of Jesus Christ to the earth. Because Jesus said this will be a time of 'great distress' (Matt. 24:21), this period is often called the Tribulation."<sup>1</sup>

"Daniel views this entire seventieth week as a time of wrath (cf. Dan. 12:7)."<sup>2</sup>

The strongest argument for a literal fulfillment of the events predicted in verse 27 is that the events predicted in verses 24 through 26 were fulfilled literally. Jeremiah's prediction of the length of the Captivity (v. 2) was also fulfilled literally.

"The 'abomination of desolation' set up by Antiochus is *not* the ultimate fulfillment of Daniel 9:27 because (a) Antiochus does not fit the time sequence given in that verse, and (b) long after the time of Antiochus, Jesus said Daniel's prophecy of the abomination of desolation was *still* future (Matt. 24:15-16)."<sup>3</sup>

"The premier tribulation text, cited by Jesus in the Olivet discourse (Matt. 24:15; Mark 13:14), and alluded to by Paul in his Day of the Lord discourse (2 Thess. 2:4), is Daniel 9:27. Detailing the events of the seven-year Tribulation, this passage uniquely set[s] off the beginning, midpoint, and end of the Tribulation."<sup>4</sup>

---

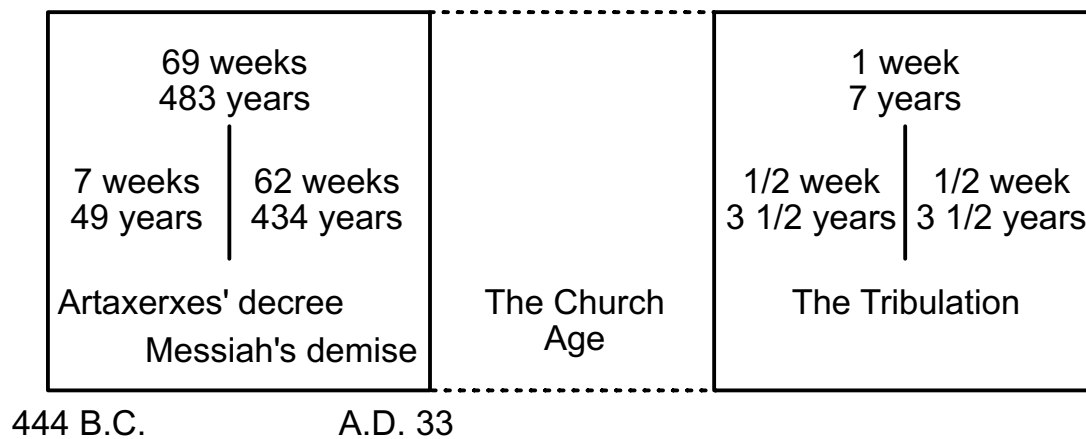
<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1364. See also *The New Scofield ...*, p. 913.

<sup>2</sup>J. Randall Price, "Old Testament Tribulation Terms," in *When the Trumpet Sounds*, p. 77.

<sup>3</sup>Dyer, in *The Old ...*, p. 719.

<sup>4</sup>Price, "Old Testament ...," p. 76. See Fruchtenbaum, *The ... Daniel*, pp. 352-413; or Charles H. Ray, "Daniel 9:24-27 Considered, Part I" and "Daniel 9:24-27 Considered, Part II," in *Dispensationalism Tomorrow & Beyond*, pp. 293-320 and 323-41, for a thorough discussion of verses 24 through 27.

Daniel's Seventy Weeks  
Dan. 9:24-27



**C. DANIEL'S MOST DETAILED VISION OF THE FUTURE CHS. 10—12**

We have observed that God's method of revealing what He wanted Daniel to know and to communicate about the future follows good pedagogy (the method and practice of teaching). God first gave the prophet a general picture of the future, first about humanity generally and then about Israel. Then, after Daniel had had time to think about what God had told him, He filled in more detail. In other words, God went from the known to the unknown in teaching Daniel these things. In this final vision of the book we have even more detail about the future, particularly about Israel's future.

"There is hardly anything in the Bible that is just like these chapters [10—12], especially like chapter 11. The word, the vision, and minute prediction are combined in a manner that is found nowhere else in the Scriptures."<sup>1</sup>

The first chapter (ch. 10) and verse 1 of chapter 11 introduce the vision that follows. There are two parts to this vision: the immediate future from Darius through Antiochus (11:2-35); and the distant future, namely, the seventieth "seven" (9:27), or Tribulation Period (11:36—12:4). The rest of chapter 12 provides a conclusion to this revelation.

---

<sup>1</sup>Leupold, p. 441.



### 1. Daniel's preparation to receive the vision 10:1—11:1

This section can be divided into seven parts.

#### **The background of the vision 10:1**

The third year of Cyrus' rule as king over Babylon was 536 B.C. Cyrus had begun ruling over Persia in 558 B.C., but Daniel's and the other biblical writers' interest in Cyrus was as ruler over Babylon, which he conquered in 539 B.C. Cyrus had issued his decree allowing the Jews to return to their land and to rebuild their temple in 538 B.C. Some of them had departed that same year under Zerubbabel's leadership.

The returned exiles had reinstituted the sacrifices by 537 B.C. (Ezra 3:6), and by 536 B.C. they had begun to rebuild the temple (Ezra 3:8). Daniel would have been in his 80s in 536 B.C., and his age may account for his not returning to the Promised Land. Daniel remained in government service until the first year of Cyrus (538 B.C., 1:21), but he remained in Babylon for several additional years, perhaps in "retirement."

Critics have attacked the Book of Daniel because, they claim, the title "Cyrus king of Persia" was not a contemporary way of referring to him.<sup>1</sup> However, this would have been a perfectly legitimate way of referring to this king unofficially, if not officially.<sup>2</sup>

Perhaps Daniel's Babylonian name appears again here in order to assure the reader that this was the same Daniel whom we met in preceding chapters (cf. 1:7). He was the Daniel who had unusual skill in understanding visions and dreams (1:17).

The message that came to Daniel was a revelation from God that included a vision. The emphasis on "message" in this verse may indicate that, in contrast to the preceding visions, this one came primarily as a spoken message, evidently from an angel. Daniel claimed that the message was true and that it involved a revelation of great conflict to come. The AV translation "the time appointed was long" has less textual support, but the message did involve prophecy yet far distant in the future. Daniel apparently understood this vision better than he did some of the earlier

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Montgomery, p. 405.

<sup>2</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 223. See also R. D. Wilson, "The Title 'King of Persia' in the Scriptures," *Princeton Theological Review* 15 (1917):90-145.

ones (e.g., 8:27). This verse as a whole prepares the reader for the revelation itself, which has major significance.

"The revelation in the vision given to Daniel on this occasion shattered any hope the prophet might have had that Israel would enjoy her new freedom and peace for long."<sup>1</sup>

### Daniel's personal preparations 10:2-3

- 10:2        The vision in chapter 9 came after Daniel had been praying and fasting (9:3). The vision that follows in this chapter also came to him after he had been mourning, fasting, and undoubtedly praying, for three weeks (cf. 1:11-13). Obviously these were literal weeks of days. Perhaps they were the days in which the Jewish Passover and Feast of Unleavened Bread were celebrated.<sup>2</sup>
- 10:3        Evidently, the previous revelations from God, and the welfare of the Jews—who had returned to Palestine but were encountering opposition—were the reasons for Daniel's grave concern (cf. Ezra 4:1-5, 24; Phil. 4:6-7). Even though many Israelites were returning to Palestine, God had already revealed that they would experience trouble there.

### Daniel's vision of the man by the Tigris river 10:4-9

- 10:4        Daniel had gone to the Tigris (*Hiddekel*, AV; cf. Gen. 2:14) River, perhaps to pray for the exiles who had returned, and he had probably gone there with other godly Jews (cf. v. 7). Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread fell on the fourteenth through the twenty-first days of the first month. The Jews did not observe these festivals in captivity as they had formerly done in their own land. Three days after these important memorial days, God gave Daniel a vision that he alone saw (cf. 12:5).

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1365.

<sup>2</sup>*The Nelson ...*, p. 1438.

- 10:5 The man whom Daniel saw in this vision may have been the Son of God.<sup>1</sup> Jewish interpreters and some modern Christian scholars preferred the view that he was an angel.<sup>2</sup> The similarities between this man, and the one that Ezekiel and the Apostle John saw, argue for his being divine (cf. Ezek. 1:26-28; Rev. 1:13-16; 2:18). However, what this man proceeded to say (esp. v. 13) has led some to prefer the view that he was an angel.

Expensive linen dress is what the priests in Israel wore, and it distinguished them as God's special servants. Likewise, the sash around this "man's" waist, evidently embroidered with or made completely of the best gold, would have identified him as a special person. The meaning of "Uphaz" is uncertain. It may be the same as "Ophir," since the translators of the Syriac version of Jeremiah substituted "Ophir" for "Uphaz" in Jeremiah 10:9.

The location of Ophir is also uncertain. It may have been in southwestern or southeastern Arabia, on the northeast African coast, or in India.<sup>3</sup> Alternatively, Uphaz may be a technical term for refined gold.<sup>4</sup>

- 10:6 The personal descriptions of this man resemble what the Apostle John saw on the island of Patmos, namely, the Son of God (Rev. 1:13-16; cf. Ezek. 1:13-14). All these features picture a person of great glory and splendor.

"The impression given to Daniel was that the entire body of the man in the vision was like a gigantic transparent jewel reflecting the glory of the rest of the vision."<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 409; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 225; McGee, 3:591; Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 243; Feinberg, p. 141; Whitcomb, p. 138; Campbell, p. 118; Merrill, "A Theology ...," p. 388; Wiersbe, p. 297; Culver, "Daniel," p. 796.

<sup>2</sup>E.g., Leupold, pp. 447-48; Archer, "Daniel," p. 123; Pentecost, "Daniel," pp. 1365-66; Baldwin, p. 180; Ironside, p. 174; Fruchtenbaum, *The ... Daniel*, p. 421.

<sup>3</sup>*The New Bible Dictionary*, s.v. "Ophir," by D. J. Wiseman, p. 911.

<sup>4</sup>*Ibid.*, s.v. "Uphaz," by D. J. Wiseman, p. 1304.

<sup>5</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 243.

- 10:7-9 Daniel's companions, sensing that something awesome was happening (cf. Acts 9:7; 22:9), hid themselves while Daniel viewed what God showed him (v. 7). His personal reaction to this vision was also similar to the Apostle John's (v. 8; cf. 8:27; Rev. 1:17). The words of the person whom Daniel saw, along with his glorious appearance, caused the prophet to faint (v. 9).

### The subject of the revelation 10:10-14

- 10:10 The "man" who touched Daniel and who proceeded to speak to him may have been the same one that the prophet saw in the vision (vv. 5-6). Walvoord held, correctly I think, that the person in verses 5 and 6 was God, but the person in verses 10 through 21 was an angel.<sup>1</sup> He might have been Gabriel, since God sent Gabriel to Daniel on other occasions (8:16; 9:21).<sup>2</sup>

- 10:11 The angel described Daniel as "you who are treasured" (cf. 9:23; 10:19). We know that Daniel enjoyed a good reputation among his contemporaries, but this title probably reflects God's estimate of him. The Hebrew words used here (*'ish hemudot*) literally mean "man of preciousness." Daniel was precious to God, not only because he was one of God's chosen people, but also because God had been precious to him.

"... Daniel's privileged status as one especially precious to God resulted from his complete absorption in the will and glory of the Lord to whom he had yielded his heart."<sup>3</sup>

It was only appropriate for Daniel to stand in order to receive a message from this impressive messenger from God.

- 10:12 Still, it was an unnerving experience for Daniel to stand in the presence of such a glorious person. The "man" realized how Daniel felt and encouraged him not to fear. He informed the prophet that God had heard his first prayer for understanding, and that what was to follow came in answer to that petition

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., pp. 243, 245.

<sup>2</sup>McGee, 3:592.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 124.

(cf. 9:23). Humbling himself before God involved Daniel taking the role of a learner before Him.

"This verse constitutes a great encouragement to those whose prayers are not answered immediately. The cause of the delay may be something totally unknown to us; yet although the answer may be delayed, the prayer is always heard immediately."<sup>1</sup>

10:13 Someone had delayed the arrival of God's answer to Daniel's prayer. He was the "prince of the kingdom of Persia," evidently a fallen angel who, under Satan's authority, had a special responsibility for Persia (cf. v. 20; Eph. 2:2). "Prince" here probably refers to an angel, since Michael is also called a "prince" (vv. 13, 21).<sup>2</sup> The prince of Persia must have been an evil angel, since he opposed God's purpose. Angelic hostility in the unseen world had resulted in the 21-day delay of Michael's arrival with God's message (cf. v. 2).

"The powers of evil apparently have the capacity to bring about hindrances and delays, even of the delivery of the answers to believers whose requests God is minded to answer. ...

"While God can, of course, override the united resistance of all the forces of hell if he chooses to do so, he accords to demons certain limited powers of obstruction and rebellion somewhat like those he allows humans. In both cases the exercise of free will in opposition to the Lord of heaven is permitted by him when he sees fit. But as Job 1:12 and 2:6 indicate, the malignity of Satan is never allowed to go beyond the due limit set by God, who will not allow the believer to be tested beyond his limit (1 Cor 10:13)."<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Feinberg, p. 141.

<sup>2</sup>See Zöckler, 7:2:228, in Lange's commentary, for further support.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," pp. 124, 125.

It seems unlikely to me that the prince of Persia could have resisted the Son of God this way, if He were the person addressing Daniel. Moreover, God's messenger had received help from Michael, one of the chief princes (angels), so it seems unlikely that he was God Himself. Some angels have more authority and power than others do (Eph. 1:21).

It may be that a situation in the political life of Persia was the human occasion of this delay. Perhaps some human rulers in the Persian court were opposing legislation that favored the Jews.<sup>1</sup>

"Although the entire subject of the unseen struggle between the holy angels and the fallen angels is not clearly revealed in the Scriptures, from the rare glimpses which are afforded, as in this instance, it is plain that behind the political and social conditions of the world there is angelic influence—good on the part of the holy angels, evil on the part of the angels under satanic control. This is the struggle to which Paul referred in Ephesians 6:10-18."<sup>2</sup>

"Bad angels, called demons in the New Testament, are, without a doubt, referred to here. In the course of time, these demonic powers gained a very strong influence over certain nations and the government of these nations. They became the controlling power. They used whatever resources they could muster to hamper God's work and to thwart His purposes."<sup>3</sup>

Evidently the good angel who spoke to Daniel had performed some duty in Persia that involved the kings or rulers of that land. However, having received a commission from God to visit Daniel, he was not able to break away to deliver it because of the influence of the bad angel who exercised strong influence

---

<sup>1</sup>D[arby], *Studies in ...*, p. 75.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 247.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, pp. 457-58.

over Persia. Michael visited the good angel and helped him break away from this wicked angel's power so that he could visit Daniel.

Keil projected this idea even further. His view is speculation:

"The plural [kings of Persia] denotes, that by the subjugation of the demon of the Persian kingdom, his influence not merely over Cyrus, but over all the following kings of Persia, was brought to an end, so that the whole of the Persian kings became accessible to the influence of the spirit proceeding from God and in advancing the welfare of Israel."<sup>1</sup>

There has been much interest in spiritual warfare in recent years among professing Christians.<sup>2</sup> Certainly spiritual warfare is a biblical revelation, and we need to be aware of it and live accordingly. However, much that is being taught about spiritual warfare, and particularly about "territorial demons," goes beyond the teaching of Scripture.<sup>3</sup> (The idea that there are "territorial demons" rests primarily on Daniel 10:13.)

For example, there is no biblical instruction or precedent that would justify praying against, and claiming victory over certain demons by name, as some are doing and advocating today. It seems clear that Daniel did not know about this heavenly conflict between these angels. Michael's success was not due to Daniel's praying, for or against, certain angels or demons.

"Daniel, while supporting the idea of territorial identification of certain angels especially in chap. 10, does not support any sort of human involvement in angelic warfare."<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, p. 419.

<sup>2</sup>See the bibliography at the end of these notes for some titles.

<sup>3</sup>See Robert P. Lightner, *Angels, Satan, and Demons*, pp. 155-58.

<sup>4</sup>Gerry Breshears, "The Body of Christ: Prophet, Priest, or King?" *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 37:1 (March 1994):14.

There may be hindrances to our praying, about which we know nothing, as we wonder why an answer to our prayer does not come. Nevertheless, we should keep on praying (Luke 18:1-8). This incident reminds us of the importance of persisting in prayer. If Daniel had stopped praying on the twentieth day, he might not have received the great revelation of chapter 11 on the twenty-first day.

- 10:14 The good angel had come to explain to Daniel what would happen to the Jews in the latter days yet future. Daniel had already received some revelation about what lay ahead for the Jews (8:23-26; 9:24-27). It was evidently this revelation that puzzled him and led to his praying for clarification (vv. 2, 12). What follows in 11:2 through 12:4 is more information on this subject of the future of the Jews. As in 8:23 through 26, and 9:24 through 27, 11:2 through 12:4 contains information about Israel's fate relative to Antiochus Epiphanes, in the near future, and information about Israel's fate relative to Antichrist, in the distant future.

#### **Daniel's continuing weakness 10:15-17**

- 10:15 Apparently the angel's explanation about the angelic conflict was something about which Daniel had known nothing. His only reaction to this information, on top of the vision that he had just seen, was to bow his head and silently accept this revelation.
- 10:16-17 The one "who resembled a human" was probably an angel who touched Daniel's lips and thereby enabled him to speak (cf. 7:16; 8:15-19; 9:21-22; Isa. 6:7; Jer. 1:9). The prophet proceeded to explain to the angel that the vision had caused him anxiety and had robbed him of his strength (cf. Isa. 6:5). He said that he felt so inferior to the angel that he considered himself unworthy to talk to him.<sup>1</sup> Furthermore, he felt without sufficient strength and breath to do so.

---

<sup>1</sup>R. H. Charles, *The Book of Daniel*, p. 116.



**Daniel's further strengthening 10:18-19**

10:18 This is the third instance, in this chapter, of Daniel receiving strength from an angel who touched him (vv. 10, 16; cf. Heb. 1:14). Compare Luke's record of an angel strengthening Jesus in the Garden of Gethsemane (Luke 22:39-44). This human-appearing angel was probably the same one who touched Daniel's lips (v. 16), but he is perhaps different from the angel who had shaken him (i.e. "set me on my hands and knees," NET2, v. 10).<sup>1</sup>

10:19 The angel repeated the complimentary description "you who are treasured" (cf. v. 11; 9:23), which reassured Daniel. He also encouraged him not to fear, to feel at peace, to take courage, and to be courageous (v. 19; cf. Josh. 1:9). These words strengthened the aged prophet (cf. 2 Cor. 12:7-10), and he asked the angel to give him the rest of the revelation.

The total effect of these many verses that dwell on Daniel's felt weakness, and the strength that an angel or angels provided him, is to make the reader anticipate the following revelation as something very important.

"This vision [in 11:2—12:4] contains the most detailed prophetic revelation in the Book of Daniel."<sup>2</sup>

**The angel's explanation of his activity 10:20—11:1**

10:20 The angel asked if Daniel knew why he had come to him. He apparently did this in order to focus the prophet's attention on the vision that follows, and since Daniel felt quite weak.

The angel informed Daniel that he had to return to resume fighting against the demon who was influencing Persia (v. 13), and then battle the one that would be influencing Greece. Feinberg understood "the prince of Greece" to be a reference to Alexander the Great.<sup>3</sup> Persia and Greece, of course, are two

---

<sup>1</sup>NET2 refers to *The NET2 (New English Translation) Bible*, 2019 ed.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1366.

<sup>3</sup>Feinberg, p. 145.

of the kingdoms that have been the focus of prophecy in this book (chs. 2; 7; 8; 9; 11:2-4, 5-35).

"From this we can learn that, behind the many details of prophecy relating to the history of this period, there is the unseen struggle between angelic forces that the will of God may be accomplished."<sup>1</sup>

10:21 "The writing of truth" seems to refer to all that God has recorded as truth. The angel would make part of what God had established as truth known to Daniel. The angel intended this revelation to encourage Daniel, in view of his having to leave the prophet to return to spiritual warfare.

Likewise, the fact that Michael stood with this angel in his warfare would have encouraged Daniel, even though Michael was apparently this angel's only other angelic comrade in battle. "Your prince" links Michael with Daniel, and identifies Michael as the good angel whom God had commissioned to help him and his Jewish brethren (12:1; cf. Rev. 12:7; 20:2).

"It is encouraging for God's people to know that he has mighty champions among the holy angels whose task is to defend the saints against the attacks of the evil one."<sup>2</sup>

11:1 This verse actually concludes the tenth chapter. The NIV, TNIV, RSV, NRSV, NEB, HCSB, and CEV translators have sought to clarify this fact by making this verse the last part of the paragraph begun in verse 18.<sup>3</sup> Without observing this connection we might conclude that another reference to a king introduces a different incident from the one already introduced in 10:1 (cf. 1:1; 2:1; 3:1; 4:1; 5:1; 6:1; 7:1; 8:1; 9:1).

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 250.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 127. Cf. Heb. 1:14.

<sup>3</sup>RSV refers to *The Holy Bible: Revised Standard Version*, NRSV refers to *The Holy Bible: New Revised Standard Version*, HCSB refers to *The Holy Bible: Holman Christian Standard Bible*, and CEV refers to *The Holy Bible: Contemporary English Version*.

The angel concluded his encouragement of Daniel by adding that he had been responsible for encouraging and protecting Darius the Mede during the beginning of his reign over Babylon, in 539 B.C. Another, less likely interpretation, is that the antecedent of "him" is Michael rather than Darius. I think it is less likely in view of the apparent point of this verse explained below.

As mentioned previously (see my comment on 5:31), this Darius was probably another name for Gobryus. The first year of Darius in view was the first year of his reign as king of Babylon, namely, 539 B.C. Obviously this angel's ministry had been effective and had resulted in blessing for the Jews. Darius had also issued a decree commanding everyone in his kingdom to honor Yahweh (6:26-27), assuming that incident happened before the events of chapters 10 through 12.

Thus, the point of this verse is that the good fortune that the Israelites now experienced, under Darius, had been the result of successful angelic warfare in the heavenly realms. This change for the better would encourage Daniel as he pondered the future revelation of Israel's fortunes that he was about to receive. Three antagonists of Israel would seek to implement the plan of Satan and his angels to eliminate the Jews: Haman, Antiochus, and Antichrist. Nevertheless, holy angels, though invisible, would resist them effectively.

Dated Events in Daniel in Chronological Order		
Event	Date	Reference
Daniel taken to Babylon	605 B.C.	1:1
Nebuchadnezzar's dream of a statue	603-02 B.C.	2:1
Daniel's dream of four beasts	553 B.C.	7:1
Daniel's vision of a ram and a goat	551 B.C.	8:1
Belshazzar's feast	539 B.C.	5:30-31

Daniel's vision of 70 weeks	539 B.C.	9:1
An angel's help of Darius the Mede	539 B.C.	11:1
Daniel's vision of two Antichrists	536 B.C.	10:1

## **2. The near future 11:2-35**

The interpreting angel now explained the long anticipated—since 10:1—revelation about the future that involved Daniel's people, the Jews. The first part of this revelation concerns events preceding Messiah's first advent (vv. 2-35), and the second part concerns events preceding Messiah's second advent (11:36—12:4).<sup>1</sup>

### **Four future Persian kings 11:2**

This revelation begins at the same place as the vision of the ram and the goat in chapter 8, namely, with the second kingdom of Nebuchadnezzar's image (ch. 2) and with the second of the four beasts (ch. 7), which is Persia.

Daniel learned that three more Persian kings would arise in Persia. Historically, these proved to be Cambyses, Pseudo-Smerdis (also known as Gaumata and Bardiya), and Darius I.<sup>2</sup> The fourth Persian king to appear did indeed become stronger than his predecessors, and he attacked Greece—just as predicted. He was Xerxes I (Ahasuerus). Some conservative scholars do not count Pseudo-Smerdis but identify the third king as Xerxes and the fourth as Artaxerxes I (465-424, Ezra 7:11-26).<sup>3</sup> However, Artaxerxes did not contend with Greece as Xerxes did. Xerxes attacked Greece in 480 B.C.

---

<sup>1</sup>The primary sources of information about the events that preceded Messiah's first advent (vv. 2-35), apart from Daniel himself, are the second-century B.C. Greek historian Polybius, the apocryphal books of 1 and 2 Maccabees, the first-century B.C. writer Diodorus Siculus, the Roman historian Livy (ca. 59 B.C.-A.D. 17), Josephus, the second-century A.D. writer Appian, and the historian Porphyry, whom Jerome quoted. See Goldingay, p. 293; Baldwin, p. 190.

<sup>2</sup>See Fruchtenbaum, *The ... Daniel*, pp. 432-33, for a table that lists the world leaders mentioned in Daniel 11.

<sup>3</sup>E.g., Collins, p. 377.

with a huge army, but he suffered defeat and never recovered. This campaign probably took place between chapters 1 and 2 of Esther.<sup>1</sup>

"After his [Xerxes'] great army (estimated by Herodotus at a million men [cf. Herodotus, 7.60]) had subdued virtually all of Greece down to the Isthmus of Corinth and the city of Athens had been reduced to ashes, Xerxes' navy was thoroughly worsted by the united Greek fleet at the Battle of Salamis in 480 B.C. This unexpected setback prompted him to beat a hasty retreat to Asia. The one-hundred-thousand-man land army he left behind under the command of Mardonius was completely crushed in the following year by the allied forces of the Greeks at the battle of Plataea."<sup>2</sup>

### **The rise and fall of Alexander the Great 11:3-4**

11:3        The mighty king who arose and did as he pleased, as predicted here, proved to be Alexander the Great (cf. 2:32, 39b; 7:6; 8:5-8, 21). He was, of course, a Greek. His invasion of the Persian Empire was in large part retaliation for Xerxes' attacks against his people. He first attacked the Persians at the Granicus River near Constantinople in 334 B.C., and he finally cast off the Persian yoke at Gaugamela near Nineveh in 331 B.C. His conquest of the ancient world took only five years (334-330 B.C.).

11:4        After conquering most of the ancient world, even farther east than the Persian Empire extended, Alexander died prematurely in Babylon, which he had made his imperial capital, in 323 B.C. His two sons, Hercules and Alexander, were both murdered when they were very young, as was his uncle, Philip Arrhidaeus.

Consequently, Alexander's kingdom eventually was divided up between his four leading generals (cf. 7:6; 8:8, 22). Cassander ruled Macedonia-Greece, Lysimachus governed Thrace-Asia Minor, Seleucus took the rest of Asia except lower Syria and Canaan, and Ptolemy reigned over Egypt and Canaan. This Greek Empire following Alexander's demise did not retain the

---

<sup>1</sup>See the chart of Persian Kings of the Restoration Period under my comments on 5:31 above.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 128.

strength that it had previously under the centralized authority of Alexander.

### Conflicts between the Ptolemies and the Seleucids 11:5-20

The angel now began describing the affairs of two kingdoms whose kings he called "the king of the South" and "the king of the North."<sup>1</sup> These north and south directions are in relation to Canaan, the land of Daniel and his people. The nation to the south was Egypt (v. 8), which Ptolemy I and his descendants ruled. The kingdom to the north was what later became Syria, which Seleucus I and his heirs governed. Shortly after the division of Alexander's kingdom into four parts, this Syrian kingdom included much of Asia Minor in the West, and it extended into India in the East. The Holy Land stood between these two great powers, Egypt and Syria, and it became territory that each one coveted and tried to possess.

It is important to recognize that "the king of the South" and "the king of the North" are titles (like "Pharaoh") for the rulers of the South and the North. These titles do not always refer to the same individuals in prophecy. There were several different kings of the South and several different kings of the North.

"Daniel is not going to attempt to write the history of Egypt and the history of Syria except insofar as they help us to understand the things that bear on the welfare of the people of God."<sup>2</sup>

11:5      The king who is described in this verse proved to be Ptolemy I Soter (323-285 B.C.). He was one of Alexander's most powerful generals, and he proclaimed himself king of Egypt in 304 B.C. He was an ambitious monarch who sought to extend his rule north into Cyprus, Asia Minor, and Greece. His dynasty ruled Egypt until 30 B.C.

The "prince" under the king of the South, who would gain ascendancy over the king of the South, was Seleucus I Nicator (312-281 B.C.), who was another of Alexander's most prominent generals. He had obtained authority to rule Babylon

---

<sup>1</sup>See Fruchtenbaum, *The ... Daniel*, pp. 441-42, for two tables and a chart that list the Ptolemies and Seleucids with their dates and that show their relationships to one another.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, p. 479.

in 321 B.C. However, in 316 B.C., another of Alexander's generals, Antigonus, attacked Babylon. Seleucus sought help from Ptolemy I, and with Ptolemy's sponsorship and superior power he was able to retain control of Babylon. He was in this sense Ptolemy's "prince": he submitted to him in order to gain his military support against Antigonus.

Seleucus I eventually ruled all of Babylonia, Media, and Syria, which was a territory much larger than Ptolemy's. He assumed the title "king" in 305 B.C. and was "the king of the North" referred to in this verse. His dynasty lasted until 64 B.C.

11:6 In the South, Ptolemy I eventually died, in 285 B.C., leaving his throne to his son, Ptolemy II Philadelphus (285-246 B.C.).<sup>1</sup> Philadelphus was friendly toward the Jews and sponsored the Septuagint translation of the Hebrew Bible into Greek.<sup>2</sup>

In the North, Seleucus I was the victim of an assassin in 281 B.C., and his son, Antiochus I Soter (281-262 B.C.), began ruling in his place. Antiochus I died in 262 B.C. and left his son, Antiochus II, in power.

Ptolemy II of Egypt and Antiochus II of Syria were contemporaries. They were also bitter enemies. However, they finally made an alliance about 250 B.C., which they sealed with the marriage of Ptolemy II's daughter, Berenice, to Antiochus II. When Ptolemy II died, in 246 B.C., Antiochus II took back his first wife, Laodice, whom Antiochus had divorced in order to marry Berenice. Laodice is the woman for whom the town of Laodicea in Asia Minor was named (Rev. 3:14; et al.). Similarly, the towns of Antioch, in Syria and in Asia Minor, received their names from this Antiochus. Antioch of Syria was the capital of Syria during the Selucid dynasty.

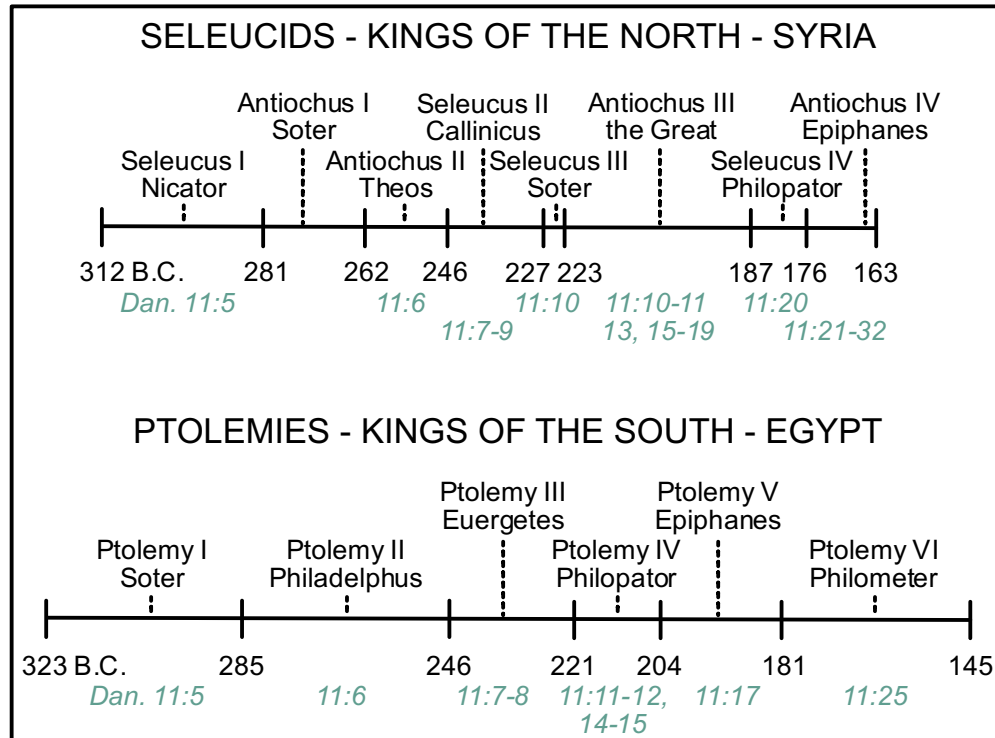
In order to gain revenge, because Antiochus had taken his first wife back, his second wife, Laodice, had Berenice and her infant son by Antiochus murdered. Laodice also poisoned Antiochus and ruled in his place briefly. Her son, Seleucus II, then

---

<sup>1</sup>Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 12:2:1.

<sup>2</sup>See *ibid.*, 12:2:6, 13.

succeeded his father, Antiochus II, and ruled Syria beginning in 246 B.C. Berenice turned out to be the woman whom the angel referred to in this verse.



The NASB text says, "She [Berenice] will not keep her position of power [as queen of the North] ... but she will be given up [by her husband, Antiochus II], along with those who brought her in [perhaps the diplomats who arranged the marriage] and the one who fathered her [her father, Ptolemy II] as well as he who supported her in those times [perhaps her supporting patron]."

- 11:7 Berenice's brother, Ptolemy III (246-222 B.C.), whose other name, Euergetes, means "Benefactor," succeeded his father and determined to avenge Berenice's death. He attacked Seleucus II at Antioch in Syria and killed Laodice. He also conquered much adjacent territory and remained the foremost power in the region for the rest of his reign.
- 11:8 Ptolemy III returned to Egypt from Antioch with much spoil, including idols and precious vessels from the temples and treasure houses of Syria. He also signed a treaty with Seleucus



II, in 240 B.C., that resulted in peace between their two nations.

11:9 Evidently Seleucus II invaded Egypt later unsuccessfully, though I know of no record of this in secular history.

11:10 Seleucus II's son, Seleucus III Ceraunus (sometimes called Soter, 226-223 B.C.), succeeded his father upon his death in 227 B.C. But Seleucus III himself died not many years later in 223 B.C., and his brother, Antiochus III "the Great" (223-187 B.C.), became king of the North. Both of these sons of Seleucus II had sought to restore Syria's glory. Seleucus III invaded Asia Minor, and later Antiochus III attacked Egypt.

Though Antiochus III did not defeat Egypt, he was successful in gaining control of Israel during his campaign of 219-217 B.C. Egypt's northern border had, until then, been Syria. But Antiochus III drove the Egyptians, then led by Ptolemy IV, back to the southern borders of Israel. He earned the epitaph "the Great" because of his military successes.

All of this prediction did not just prove that God can anticipate history by hundreds of years, which is an amazing fact in itself. It also set the stage for events in the Holy Land, which was the primary concern of this revelation to Daniel.

11:11 In an attempt to recapture his lost territory to the north, Ptolemy IV Philopator (222-203 B.C.) attacked Antiochus III on the southern borders of Israel, specifically at Raphia, in 217 B.C. Initially he was successful.

"Antiochus lost his entire army and was almost captured as he fled to the desert."<sup>1</sup>

11:12 Ptolemy IV was proud but did not pursue his advantage, even though he killed many Syrians. He did acquire all of Canaan, however.

11:13 Antiochus III then proceeded to turn in other directions for conquests, specifically to his east and to his north. About 203

---

<sup>1</sup>Jerome, p. 124.

B.C., Antiochus III returned with a much larger army and repulsed the Egyptians, who were then under the rule of the child-king, Ptolemy V Epiphanes (203-181 B.C.). Antiochus was able to retake Canaan as far south as Gaza.

11:14 The Macedonians under Philip V of Macedonia, and the Jews living in Israel, joined Antiochus III in opposing the Egyptians. Evidently some of the politically zealous Jews believed that they could gain more freedom if Antiochus III succeeded, but that did not happen.

11:15 The fortified city that Antiochus III besieged and took was Sidon, which he defeated about 200 B.C. There he forced the Egyptian General Scopas, whom he had recently defeated at Paneas (biblical Dan), near the headwaters of the Jordan River, to surrender. Three other Egyptian commanders tried to free Scopas from Sidon, but they failed. The king of the North in this instance was Seleucus IV Philopator (187-175 B.C.).

11:16 Antiochus III continued to solidify Syrian control over Canaan without successful opposition from the Egyptians.

"When Scopas finally surrendered to Antiochus III at Sidon, the Holy Land was permanently acquired by the Antioch [Syrian] government, to the exclusion of Egypt."<sup>1</sup>

When Antiochus III entered Jerusalem, the populace welcomed him as a deliverer and benefactor.

11:17 Antiochus III, under threat from Rome, then initiated peace with Egypt and offered his daughter Cleopatra to Ptolemy V in marriage to cement their alliance.<sup>2</sup> He hoped that Cleopatra would remain pro-Syrian and that her loyalty to him would give him control over Egypt. This attempt failed, however. Cleopatra consistently sided with her husband against her father, even though Ptolemy V was then only a boy.

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 132.

<sup>2</sup>Cf. Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 12:4:1.

- 11:18 Antiochus III then turned his attention to the Aegean coast and sought to conquer Asia Minor and Greece. He had been contemptuous of Roman authority in Greece and had said the Romans had no business there. Antiochus did not succeed completely because a Roman commander named Claudius Scipio resisted him effectively. He is the commander that fulfilled the prophecy in this verse.
- 11:19 Antiochus III returned to Antioch where he died a year later, in 187 B.C. He had tried to reunite Alexander the Great's empire under his own authority, but he failed, largely because he underestimated the power of the rising Roman Empire. Nevertheless Antiochus III, "the Great," was a brilliant and successful military leader.
- 11:20 Antiochus' elder son, Seleucus IV, succeeded his father. He taxed his people, including the Jews, so heavily, in order to pay Rome, that his Jewish tax collector, Heliodorus (2 Macc. 3:7), poisoned him. Heliodorus was evidently the oppressor that Seleucus sent through "the Jewel [or splendor] of his kingdom"—probably Israel, especially Jerusalem and its temple—collecting taxes. This assassination set the stage for the terrible persecutions of the Jews that followed. Thus Seleucus IV did not die because of mob violence, as his father had, or in battle, but from poison, as this verse predicted ("he will stumble and fall").

### **The great persecution under Antiochus Epiphanes 11:21-35**

God gave more information about the following individual than He did about all the preceding ones in this prophecy combined. The reason is his devastating influence on the Jews. During his reign as king, Syria was in decline and Rome was gaining power. Antiochus IV corresponds to the little horn of chapter 8 (8:9-12, 23-25), and he foreshadows the little horn of chapter 7 (7:8): Antichrist.

"The earlier kings are described to provide a background for Antiochus Epiphanes (175-164 B.C.), and he is given ample attention because he foreshadows Antichrist of the end times.

The movement of the chapter is toward these two significant personages who dramatically affect the fate of the Jews."<sup>1</sup>

- 11:21 The Seleucid king who succeeded Seleucus IV was the younger son of Antiochus III, namely, Antiochus IV Epiphanes (175-164 B.C.).<sup>2</sup> Antiochus IV honored himself by taking on the name "Epiphanes." He linked "Epiphanes" with "Theos" on coins that he minted and so claimed to be "God Manifest." However, he proved so untrustworthy that many people made a play on his name and called him Epimanes ("Madman").

The Seleucid kingdom's throne rightly belonged to one of the sons of Seleucus IV, who was the former king and brother of Antiochus IV. But Antiochus IV seized it for himself and had himself proclaimed king. He persuaded the leaders of Syria to allow him to rule, since Demetrius, the eldest son of Seleucus IV, was being held hostage in Rome. In this way, through scheming to gain power, he secured the throne for himself. He was "despicable" in that his background did not really qualify him for the kingship.<sup>3</sup>

- 11:22 Antiochus IV was successful in battle against the Egyptians initially, which this verse describes as flooding away the overwhelming forces opposed to him. The Egyptian king was now Ptolemy VI, whom Antiochus deceived and then defeated.

"It was Epiphanes' policy to throw his intended victims off guard by offering them his friendship and alliance. Then he would maneuver for an advantageous position till he could catch them by surprise."<sup>4</sup>

Note the parallel strategy of Antichrist (9:27). Antiochus also swept away the Jewish high priest, Onias III, here called "the prince of the covenant," about 172 B.C. Another view is that Ptolemy VI was "the prince of the covenant" since Antiochus later made a treaty with him. However, the term "covenant" in

---

<sup>1</sup>Campbell, p. 127.

<sup>2</sup>Cf. Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 12:4:11.

<sup>3</sup>Leupold, p. 494.

<sup>4</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 136.

this chapter seems to refer to the Jewish state (cf. vv. 28, 30, 32).

- 11:23 This verse probably refers to the alliance that Antiochus made with Ptolemy VI in 170 B.C. This treaty was part of a plot to advance his own power in Egypt by siding with Ptolemy VI and against his rival for the Egyptian throne. Compare Antichrist's decision to allow the Jews to return to their homeland (9:27).
- 11:24 Antiochus craftily pillaged the treasures of his provinces, but not to grow rich himself, as his predecessors had done. He used this wealth to bribe and manipulate other leaders so that they would cooperate with him. In this way he enlarged his power base (cf. 1 Macc. 3:30).
- 11:25 After Antiochus had grown strong enough, he marched his army against Ptolemy VI, in 170 B.C.<sup>1</sup> This was his first campaign against Egypt. He was able to get all the way to the Nile Delta before the Egyptians discovered that he was approaching. He exercised much influence over Egypt, usually by pretending to be an ally, and then using this enemy for his own advantage. Notice how the text highlights Antiochus' deceptiveness. We can see again how he was a forerunner of the future Antichrist.
- 11:26 Those who ate Ptolemy's choice food, his supporters who should have helped him, plotted to destroy him. Eventually his army suffered defeat and many soldiers died (cf. 1 Macc. 1:16-19).
- 11:27 This battle was successful in part because Antiochus claimed to be fighting for Ptolemy against a usurper within Egypt. When the battle was over, Antiochus and Ptolemy sat down together at a banquet, pretending to want peace. Actually each king was trying to make the most of the situation for his own benefit.

---

<sup>1</sup>Cf. Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 12:5:2.

11:28 As a result of this "peace conference," Antiochus returned home with much plunder. Then his interests turned from Egypt to Israel.

A Jew named Jason wanted to be high priest. Knowing Antiochus' reputation, Jason offered the king a bribe to depose the current high priest, Onias III. Antiochus cooperated. This state of affairs encouraged another pretender to the high priesthood, Menelaus, to try the same tactic against Jason. Antiochus cooperated again. Onias, whom the Jews respected, objected and lost his life for doing so.

Antiochus executed certain individuals for their alleged roles in these maneuverings. However, he did not punish Jason or Menelaus, but instead he scapegoated the people of Jerusalem, again in response to bribes. After Jason attempted a revolt, thinking that Antiochus was dead, Antiochus entered Jerusalem, killed 80,000 men, and, accompanied by Menelaus, desecrated the temple. This happened in 168 B.C.<sup>1</sup>

11:29 In the same year Antiochus decided to attack Egypt again. When he arrived with his army, the Roman consul, Popillius Laenas, met him at Alexandria and prevented him from invading Egypt. Consequently he was not able to do what he wanted with Egypt as he had previously done. The "appointed time" in this verse refers to God's foreordained time.

11:30 The ships from Kittim (Cyprus) that came against Antiochus were those of Popillius Laenas and Rome. Antiochus had to return home, since to do otherwise would have meant declaring war on Rome, which was a foe that he could not hope to defeat. He returned to Syria disappointed.

Again he took out his frustration on the Jews in Jerusalem who observed the "holy covenant" (i.e., the Mosaic Law; cf. v. 28). He favored the renegade Jews who had abandoned the Mosaic Law (cf. 1 Macc. 2:18; 2 Macc. 6:1). Menelaus and his henchmen, for example, willingly abandoned their religious

---

<sup>1</sup>Cf. *ibid.*, 12:5:3.

scruples rather than oppose Antiochus, who had put them in power.

11:31 Antiochus ordered his general, Apollonius, and a contingent of 22,000 soldiers, into Jerusalem on what he claimed was a peaceful mission. However, when they were inside the city, they attacked the Jews on a Sabbath day, when the Jews were reluctant to exert themselves. Apollonius killed many Jews, took many Jewish women and children captive as slaves, plundered the temple, and burned the city. Antiochus' objective was to exterminate Judaism and to Hellenize Canaan. So he prohibited the Jews from following the Mosaic Law, and he did away with the Jewish sacrifices, festivals, and circumcision (1 Macc. 1:44-54).<sup>1</sup> He even burned copies of their Law. As a culminating insult, he installed an image of Zeus, his Greek god, in the Jerusalem temple and erected an altar to Zeus on the altar of burnt offerings (cf. 2 Macc. 6:2).

This was not the first time that such a sacrilege had been committed. King Ahaz had set up an idolatrous altar (2 Kings 16:10-16), and King Manasseh had installed images of pagan gods (2 Kings 21:3-5) in the Solomon's temple.

Then Antiochus sacrificed a pig, which was an unclean animal to the Jews, on the altar, and ordered the Jews to sacrifice swine's flesh on the altar.<sup>2</sup> This happened on December 16, 168 B.C. The Jews referred to this act as "the abomination that caused desolation" (cf. 12:11), since it polluted their altar and thus made sacrifices to Yahweh on it impossible (cf. 8:23-25). Antiochus further ordered his Jewish subjects to celebrate his subsequent birthdays by offering a pig to Zeus on this altar.

Jesus Christ indicated that another similar atrocity would befall the Jews in the future (Matt. 24:15; Mark 13:14). By the way, Jesus Christ's explicit reference to "the prophet Daniel" being the writer of this prophecy in these verses should be proof enough that Daniel, rather than a second-century writer, wrote

---

<sup>1</sup>Cf. idem, *The Wars ...*, 1:1:1.

<sup>2</sup>Cf. Idem, *Antiquities of ...*, 12:5:4; 12:7:6; idem, *The Wars ...*, 1:1:2.

this book. Jesus referred to the coming atrocity literally as "the abomination that causes desolation," the exact words used in the Septuagint version of this verse in Daniel.

Thus Antiochus' actions were a preview of similar atrocities that are yet to befall the Jews. The destruction of Jerusalem in A.D. 70, by the Roman general Titus, has seemed to some interpreters to fulfill Jesus' prediction. But Titus did not treat the Jews the same way that Antiochus did. Furthermore, the Book of Revelation, which dates after the destruction of Jerusalem, predicts the coming of a "beast" who will behave as Antiochus did, only on a larger scale (Rev. 13).<sup>1</sup>

"Antiochus thus becomes a type of the future man of sin and his activities foreshadow the ultimate blasphemous persecution of Israel and the desecration of their temple."<sup>2</sup>

"Just as the Saviour had Solomon and the other saints as types of His advent, so also we should believe that the Antichrist very properly had as a type of himself the utterly wicked king, Antiochus, who persecuted the saints and defiled the Temple."<sup>3</sup>

11:32 Antiochus deceived many Jews with his flattery and promises (cf. 1 Macc. 1:11-15). They participated in the worship of Zeus.

"This tyrant was a past master in manipulating Jewish leaders who were divided in their loyalties, winning them over to his cause by glowing promises of preferment and reward. As a matter of fact, Antiochus already had as partisans for his cause a considerable number of influential leaders in Jerusalem society and politics who were

---

<sup>1</sup>See Mark L. Hitchcock, "A Defense of the Domitianic Date of the Book of Revelation" (Ph.D. dissertation, Dallas Theological Seminary), 2005.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 268.

<sup>3</sup>Jerome, p. 130.



convinced of the expediency of a pro-Hellenic policy. ...

"In some ways this defection of the would-be 'progressives' among the Jews themselves was an even more serious threat to the survival of Israel as a nation than the tyrannical measures of Antiochus. For it was the same kind of large-scale betrayal of their covenant obligations toward the Lord that had made inevitable the former destruction of Jerusalem and the Babylonian captivity in the days of Jeremiah."<sup>1</sup>

This most repulsive of all insults to the Jews brought about the Maccabean revolt, in which thousands of Jews rebelled against Antiochus. Initiated by a priest named Mattathias, from the town of Modein (Moden) in Ephraim, and led by three of his sons, Judas, Jonathan, and Simon (cf. 1 Macc. 2:23-28), this nationalistic movement eventually overthrew the Seleucids in Israel's homeland.<sup>2</sup>

The word "Maccabee" is the Greek form of the surname of Judas the son of Mattathias (1 Macc. 2:4). The Jews applied this name to the whole family of Mattathias and to the party within Israel that his sons led. The word itself also meant "Hammer" or "Eradicator," as in "the Terminator." Judas Maccabeus killed Antiochus' general, Apollonius, in battle.<sup>3</sup> Later, he and his brothers achieved many important victories that freed the Jews from Syrian domination.<sup>4</sup>

11:33 Antiochus' persecutions gave impetus to the Chassidim ("the Godly, Pious, Loyal Ones") movement that was already underway in Israel. The Chassidim advocated strict adherence to the Mosaic Law and the traditions of Judaism. Even today, the strictest orthodox Jews refer to themselves as "Hasidim." The Maccabean revolt likewise fueled this movement since it

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 140.

<sup>2</sup>Cf. Josephus, *Antiquities of ...*, 12:6:1; 13:1-2, 4-7.

<sup>3</sup>Cf. *ibid.*, 12:7:1; *idem*, *The Wars ...*, 1:1:3.

<sup>4</sup>Cf. *idem*, *The Antiquities ...*, 12:7-11; *idem*, *The Wars ...*, 1:1:4; 1:2:2.

was a political and military manifestation of the Chassidim conservative philosophy. The Chassidim movement really resulted in the spiritual survival of Israel until Jesus' time.

Some of the Chassidim became the sect of the Pharisees ("Separated Ones"), who appear prominently in the Gospels. Later a smaller group of Chassidim became the isolationist Essene community that lived at Qumran beside the Dead Sea. The Essenes repudiated the rationalism of the Sadducees and the materialism of the Pharisees. All these groups had their roots in "the people who know their God" (v. 32).

Antiochus retaliated with brutal force and killed tens of thousands of Israelites during the few years that followed his desecration of the temple. He died insane in Persia in 163 B.C.

11:34 The godly in Israel received little encouragement from their apostate pro-Hellenistic brethren at first. Even the Maccabean revolt started out small. As time went by and the Maccabees' effectiveness became apparent, more Jews joined their numbers, but many of them did so without abandoning their pro-Hellenistic convictions. They hypocritically joined the nationalists. Eventually the Maccabees had to purge their own ranks. They executed many of their fellow Jews.

11:35 Even though many godly Jews died, the struggle against the Syrians (Greeks) purified the Jews. John Hyrcanus, the son of Simon Maccabeus, eventually founded a strong Jewish kingdom. His son, Alexander Jannaeus, enlarged it to its fullest extent in the last part of the first century B.C.<sup>1</sup>

Daniel received assurance that the predicted persecution would run its course and end. The purification of his people came eventually, though not completely, through the turmoil just described. There would be a final end later.

Mention of "the end time" (v. 35) prepares for the revelation to follow, which concerns events not yet fulfilled in history. "The appointed time" (vv. 27, 29, 35; 12:7) reminds the reader that all these predicted events would

---

<sup>1</sup>See Anthony J. Tomasino, *Judaism Before Jesus*, for more detail of the Second Temple Period (from Ezra's rebuilding of the temple to its destruction by the Romans in A.D. 70).

be the outworking of divine control and purpose, even though they would involve suffering for the Israelites.

"The amazingly detailed prophecies of the first thirty-five verses of this chapter, containing as they do approximately one hundred and thirty-five prophetic statements, all now fulfilled, constitute an impressive introduction to the events that are yet future, beginning in verse 36. ... The fact is that there is no supported evidence which can contradict any statement made in these thirty-five verses. ... From the divine viewpoint, the accuracy of this prophetic word is supporting evidence that prophecy yet unfulfilled will have the same precise fulfillment in the future."<sup>1</sup>

We can understand why critics who deny the possibility of predictive prophecy believe that these verses must have been written after they occurred. The fulfillment is beyond doubt.

### **3. The distant future 11:36—12:4**

In the revelation given to Daniel about the 70 sevens (9:24-27), we observed that what Gabriel told the prophet, in verses 24 through 26, has already happened. Those verses described what would happen in the first 69 sevens. Verse 27 predicts things that have not happened yet. It reveals what will happen in the seventieth seven. There is a similar break between verses 35 and 36 of chapter 11. What was predicted in verses 2 through 35 has happened. What follows in verse 36 through 12:4 has not yet happened.<sup>2</sup>

Several conservative amillennial scholars also believed that the preceding verses describe Antiochus Epiphanes, but that with verse 36, Antichrist becomes the subject.<sup>3</sup> Even some liberal scholars, who believe that a second-century writer wrote the book as history rather than as prophecy,

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, pp. 269-70. For a political history of Judaism within Canaan from 332 B.C. to 73 A.D., see Pfeiffer, pp. 5-45.

<sup>2</sup>See Andrew E. Steinmann, "Is the Antichrist in Daniel 11?" *Bibliotheca Sacra* 162:646 (April-June 2005):195-209.

<sup>3</sup>E.g., Keil, pp. 461, 469; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, pp. 246-249; Leupold, pp. 473, 510-11.

admit that all of what follows has had no literal fulfillment in the past.<sup>1</sup> A few scholars, liberal and conservative, believe that Antiochus Epiphanes fulfilled some of the following predictions, especially those in verses 36 through 39.<sup>2</sup> John Collins believed that the whole rest of the chapter describes Antiochus Epiphanes.<sup>3</sup> I am not aware of anyone who believes that Antiochus Epiphanes fulfilled all of these predictions literally, as he fulfilled the preceding prophecies.

"No commentator claims to find precise fulfillment in the remainder of this chapter."<sup>4</sup>

In view of later revelation, in the Olivet Discourse and in the Book of Revelation particularly, what the angel told Daniel in these verses must refer to the last one of Daniel's seventy weeks. This is the last seven-year period before Jesus Christ returns to establish His earthly kingdom. Jesus called the end of it a time of "great tribulation" (Matt. 24:21), and Daniel's angel called it the worst period of distress that the Jews will ever see (12:1; cf. Jer. 30:7). Therefore it seems reasonable to conclude that what follows will occur in that seven-year period: the Tribulation.<sup>5</sup>

### The coming ruler 11:36-39

11:36 "Then" opens the door to a leap in time to the distant future, and the context (vv. 35, 37—12:4) supports this.

The predicted king in this verse will have the power to do as he pleases. Apparently he will not be subject to a higher human authority and he will not be restrained by God from doing so (cf. 7:23; Rev. 13:1-10; 17:12). He will exalt himself higher than any other god, which implies that he will demand worship (cf. 2 Thess. 2:4; Rev. 13:11-18; 17:12-13). He will also repudiate ("speak dreadful [or amazing] things against") the true God (cf. 7:25; Rev. 17:14). He will succeed for a time, until God's indignation against His people, the Jews, has run its

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., Montgomery, p. 465.

<sup>2</sup>E.g., *ibid.*, p. 461; Henry, p. 1102; Jamieson, et al., pp. 762-63; Goldingay, p. 304; Baldwin, p. 197; Chisholm, p. 326.

<sup>3</sup>Collins, pp. 386-90.

<sup>4</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 270.

<sup>5</sup>Culver, "Daniel," p. 797, gave seven reasons for believing that the prophecy shifts from Antiochus to Antichrist at verse 36.

course (cf. 8:19; Isa. 10:25; 26:20; Rev. 17:15-17). All of this will happen under the sovereign authority of God, however.

11:37 This verse gives more information about this ruler's religious convictions. The phrase "the gods of his fathers" is similar to one that occurs elsewhere in Scripture that describes the God of the Jews (cf. 2:23; Exod. 3:15-16; 4:5; et al.). This has led some interpreters to conclude that this king will be a Jew.<sup>1</sup> But the phrase does not require this interpretation. The name "God" is Elohim, which is the general word for God, rather than the covenant name "Yahweh," which God often used when stressing His relationship to His chosen people.

This word "Elohim" can have a plural translation (gods) or a singular one (God). Moreover, in the light of other revelation about this man, he seems to be a Roman (possibly someone from the West; 7:8, 24; Rev. 13:1-10). Of course, he could be a Jewish Roman. But the description of him in this verse does not identify him clearly as a Jew. Probably the angel meant that this king will abandon the religion of his past (or of his ancestors), whatever that religion may have been. He will do this because he will set himself up as the object of worship in place of all others.

The identity of "the desire of women" is also problematic. It may be a reference to the Messiah.<sup>2</sup> Some writers have believed that the supreme desire of every godly Jewish woman in Daniel's day was that she bear the Messiah. Another view is that the reference is to Tammuz (Gr. Adonis), who was a pagan god in Daniel's day that women found very attractive.<sup>3</sup> Others believe that the meaning is that this king will have no desire for women. Some even speculate that he will be abusive toward women. In other words, he will be devoid of natural

---

<sup>1</sup>E.g., D[arby], *Studies in ...*, pp. 107-14; Gaebelein, *The Prophet ...*, pp. 180-95; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 249; Ironside, p. 218; Culver, "Daniel," p. 797.

<sup>2</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1371; Gaebelein, *The Prophet ...*, p. 188; McGee, 3:600-601; Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 274; Feinberg, p. 175; Ironside, p. 221; Wiersbe, p. 304.

<sup>3</sup>Montgomery, pp. 461-62; A. A. Bevan, *A Short Commentary on the Book of Daniel*, pp. 196-97.

affection.<sup>1</sup> I tend to favor this last view. It seems that he will be an egomaniac.

11:38 What this king will really trust in is a "god" who he believes can give him military success. Evidently this is not a god in the religious sense. He will probably idolize power. His forefathers typically acknowledged some supreme being or some pagan god or gods. He will honor his "god" by spending money to build his military arsenal. In other words, he will be a materialist.

McGee believed that this god will be Satan, who controls the kingdoms of the world.<sup>2</sup> Feinberg and Ironside believed that the god in view is the Roman beast (the political leader), whom they distinguished from the Antichrist.<sup>3</sup> They identified the Antichrist with the religious leader in Jerusalem. This is a minority view among premillennialists.

11:39 The foreign god referred to in this verse may be the god of military might mentioned in verse 38. Alternatively, it may be some other foreign god that he uses for his own ends, or it may even be himself. As Antiochus before him, this ruler will reward those who are loyal to him, and he will support them by bestowing honors and positions of authority on them. Perhaps he will also take bribes, as Antiochus did, and give land to those who pay him off. Another possibility is that he will reward with lands those who are faithful to him.

### The attack against the ruler 11:40-45

11:40 Finally the very end time of the seventieth week will arrive (cf. vv. 27, 35; 12:4, 9). Then this king will be the focus of attack by the king of the South (cf. vv. 42-43), a power south of Israel, and the king of the North, a force to its north. Evidently these two rulers will attack him simultaneously.

---

<sup>1</sup>Keil, pp. 464-65; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 249; Archer, "Daniel," p. 144; Whitcomb, p. 155. Cf. Leupold, p. 515.

<sup>2</sup>McGee, 3:601.

<sup>3</sup>Feinberg, pp. 175-76; Ironside, pp. 221-22.

Apparently this other king (Antichrist) is neither the king of the South nor the king of the North.<sup>1</sup> In view of 9:26, he will probably be a western ruler: the little horn arising out of the Roman Empire (7:8, 24).<sup>2</sup> Other interpreters believe that the king of the North is the Antichrist.<sup>3</sup> Still others hold that this king is not the Antichrist but only a minor ruler.<sup>4</sup> McGee believed that he will be a Russian ruler.<sup>5</sup>

The conflict will be great, but he, apparently the ruler described in verses 36 through 39 (i.e., Antichrist), will invade many countries, overwhelm them, and pass on to conquer others. The Nazis were able to do this early in World War II, as did Alexander the Great earlier.

"Presumably the warfare will be carried on by armored vehicles and missiles such as are used in modern warfare—though in order to communicate with Daniel's generation, ancient equivalents of these are used here. Likewise, the ancient names of the countries or states occupying the region where the final conflict will be carried on are used in the prediction, though most of those political units will no longer bear these names in the last days."<sup>6</sup>

Ezekiel described a great military force descending on Israel from the far north in the future (Ezek. 38—39; 38:15). Ezekiel did not mention a power from the south. Part of the fulfillment of Ezekiel's prophecy is probably the same invasion that Daniel recorded here. I believe that part of what Ezekiel prophesied to take place, in his description of the battle of Gog and Magog, will find fulfillment at the end of the Tribulation and part of it at the end of the Millennium. The aspect of the fulfillment described in the present verse will probably occur toward the

---

<sup>1</sup>See Tanner, pp. 711-14, for discussion of the identity of the king of the North.

<sup>2</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 279; Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1372; Leupold, p. 521.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 148; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 251.

<sup>4</sup>E.g., Ironside, pp. 222-23.

<sup>5</sup>McGee, 3:602.

<sup>6</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 147.

end of the second half of the Tribulation, when Israel is suffering intense persecution.

One writer argued that this king of the North will be a ruler from the area that Assyria formerly occupied, not someone from farther north in the area of Russia. I believe that "Gog" is a code name (meaning "Dark") describing two similar invaders who will descend on Israel at two different times: at the end of the Tribulation and at the end of the Millennium. The first of these invaders is called the king of the North here.<sup>1</sup>

- 11:41 The Antichrist will also enter Canaan (cf. 8:9), and many there will fall before his forces. He will also defeat other countries in addition to Israel. He will probably enter Canaan after he breaks his covenant with Israel (cf. 9:27), which would confirm that these events will happen in the last half of the Tribulation (9:27).

There will be a few areas that the Antichrist does not overpower, however, namely those in the former territories of Edom, Moab, and Ammon. These nations were to the east and south of Israel. Today Jordan occupies this region. The "foremost" of the sons of Ammon probably refers to the best part of them.<sup>2</sup> Young believed that the names of these nations are symbolic, but he confessed ignorance concerning the meaning of the symbols.<sup>3</sup> Leupold believed that "the Beautiful Land" stands for "the church of God."<sup>4</sup>

- 11:42-43 This ruler will then press his attack and invade other countries, particularly Egypt, which will fall to his control. He will plunder the treasures of Egypt and will bring those living in the ancient territories of Libya and Ethiopia under his control. Libya lay to the west of Egypt and Ethiopia to its south.

- 11:44-45 Rumors of enemy armies from the East (cf. Rev. 9:13-21; 16:12) and from the North (cf. v. 40) will irritate this ruler,

---

<sup>1</sup>Carl Armerding, "Russia and the King of the North," *Bibliotheca Sacra* 120:477 (January-March 1963):50-55.

<sup>2</sup>Baldwin, p. 203.

<sup>3</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 253.

<sup>4</sup>Leupold, p. 521.



resulting in his killing "many" more people (cf. Zech. 13:8). Compare the invasion sequence by Sennacherib (Isa. 37:7-8). He will also return to the land of Israel. His headquarters there will evidently be in Jerusalem. This city stands between the Mediterranean and Dead Seas.

The NIV translation "at the beautiful holy mountain" confirms this location, since Jerusalem stands on a mountain. It is evidently there that Antichrist will meet his match and suffer defeat. Later revelation says that Jesus Christ will return to the Mount of Olives from heaven and destroy him (Acts 1:10; Rev. 19:19-20; cf. Zech. 14:1-4).

One writer summarized the revelation about Antichrist in verses 36 through 45 as follows: He will act in self-will (v. 36), will exalt himself (v. 36), and will magnify himself above every god (v. 36). He will blaspheme the true God (v. 36), will succeed for a limited period of time (v. 36), and will be an irreligious person (v. 37). He will also place confidence in military might (vv. 38-39), his military might will be challenged (v. 40), and he will be initially victorious in battle (vv. 40-43). However, he will face renewed conflict (v. 44), will establish his headquarters in Jerusalem (v. 45), and will finally come to an end (v. 45).<sup>1</sup>

### **The deliverance of Israel 12:1-3**

Whereas the previous verses focused on the Antichrist, those in this pericope (section of verses) concern Israel. Here we learn that this "end time" will definitely be a time of intense persecution of Jews. This section constitutes the climax of this revelation (chs. 10—12), as well as the climax of the whole series of prophecies that this book records. It highlights God's faithfulness to His promises to His chosen people Israel.

"To begin a chapter at this point is a most unfortunate division of the material. These three verses belong to the preceding revelation. ... In fact, without this conclusion the treatment of the subject matter in chapter eleven would give unseemly emphasis to the importance of the antichrist."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Campbell, pp. 132-34.

<sup>2</sup>Leupold, p. 526.

12:1 At the time of the end (11:40), Michael, the angel who is responsible to protect Israel (cf. 10:13, 21), will arise in defense of that nation. This revelation focuses the reader's attention again on the invisible and supernatural dimension to the events that will take place. "Now at that time" introduces additional information about this end time; it does not introduce a chronologically subsequent event.

This period generally will be a time of extreme distress for the Jews, worse than any other time in their history as a people (cf. Deut. 4:30; Jer. 30:7; Matt. 24:21; Rev. 6—19). This is quite a prediction, in view of all that the Jews have had to endure during their long history.

Showers argued that the "Day of the LORD," the "Time of Jacob's Trouble," and the "Great Tribulation" are all terms that Scripture uses to describe a three and one-half year period of intense trouble yet future, namely, the last half of Daniel's seventieth week.<sup>1</sup> I agree with that identification. But the term "the Day of the LORD" also refers to other periods as well (i.e., the seven-year Tribulation, the Millennium, both periods together, and other times at which God breaks into history dramatically).

The repetition of "your people" in this verse clearly identifies the Jews, not all believers. They will be the focus of intense persecution, though many non-Jews will also suffer, and Israel's land will become an international battlefield (cf. Matt. 24:22).

Nevertheless, all those Jews whose names are in "the book" will experience rescue (cf. 7:18, 27). This is not a promise of spiritual regeneration. That comes only by faith in Jesus Christ, even for Jews living then. Rather it is a promise of national deliverance from human enemies (cf. Zech. 12:10; 13:8-9; Rom. 11:26). Archer and Ironside, however, took this as spiritual deliverance from the second death.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Showers, pp. 40-43.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 151; Ironside, p. 231.

"The book" probably contains the names of all the Jews living in that region then who will experience physical deliverance (cf. Rev. 12:13-17). The figure of a book connotes a divine record, written beforehand, that is the basis for this rescue. There are several books that God keeps (Rev. 20:12; cf. Exod. 32:33; Ps. 69:28; Mal. 3:16; Luke 10:20; Rev. 20:15; et al.).<sup>1</sup> Since God is omniscient and knows everything, He does not need books to keep records in. These books are metaphors for records of what God knows.

12:2 Why did the angel say "many" will awake and not "all"? Apparently he did so to stress the fact that those Jews who die because of Antichrist's persecutions will experience resurrection at the end of this period (i.e., the Tribulation; cf. Rev. 20:4-6).<sup>2</sup> He referred to the hope of those Jews in particular. Furthermore, this wording clarifies that not all will arise then. Some will experience resurrection at other times in history (e.g., 1 Thess. 4:13-17; Rev. 20:4-6).<sup>3</sup>

The angel meant a physical resurrection, rather than just a renewal of the soul (cf. Isa. 26:19; Hos. 13:14). This seems clear since he specified that they will arise from "the dust of the ground." Some writers have taken this description as figurative for the national revival of Israel in that day, evidently to avoid confusing this resurrection with the one that will occur at the Rapture.<sup>4</sup> Young took "the dust of the ground" as figurative for the grave.<sup>5</sup> I agree with Young on this point.

"The OT's standard way of envisaging dying and coming back to life is by speaking of lying down and sleeping, then of waking and getting up. The former is an extreme form of the latter, which thus provides the metaphor for it (2 Kgs 4:31; 13:21; Isa 26:19; Jer 51:39, 57; Job 14:12).

---

<sup>1</sup>See Charles R. Smith, "The Book of Life," *Grace Theological Journal* 6:2 (Fall 1985):219-30.

<sup>2</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 256; Fruchtenbaum, *The ... Daniel*, p. 508.

<sup>3</sup>Bevan, p. 201.

<sup>4</sup>E.g., Dennett, p. 199; Gaebelien, *The Prophet ...*, p. 200, idem, *The Annotated ...*, 2:3:39; Kelly, pp. 225-26, Ironside, pp. 231-32.

<sup>5</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 256.

Further, dying means lying down with one's ancestors in the family tomb, with its nonmaterial equivalent, Sheol; so coming back to life would mean leaving such a 'land of earth' (cf. also Pss 49; 73). The image presupposes a restoring to life of the whole person with its spiritual and material aspects."<sup>1</sup>

"The Bible never speaks of sleep in reference to the soul, for sleep is not an activity of the soul. Rather, the Bible always speaks of sleep as an activity of the body (see Matt. 9:18-25; Mark 5:35-42)."<sup>2</sup>

Seventh-Day Adventism and the Christian Science cult teach that the soul sleeps.<sup>3</sup>

Some of these Jews will enter into everlasting life, namely, those of them that will be believers. Others will experience disgrace and everlasting contempt, because they do not believe on Christ (cf. Matt. 25:46; John 5:28-29). Evidently those martyred during the Tribulation and resurrected at this time will reign with Christ in His millennial kingdom, which will begin with His return to earth at the end of the Tribulation (Rev. 20:4).

While this verse teaches that there will be a resurrection of the wicked, it does not say that this will occur at the end of the Tribulation, as amillennialists believe.<sup>4</sup> It only says that others will awake to disgrace and everlasting contempt. Revelation 20:12 through 14 makes clear that the resurrection of the wicked will occur at the end of the Millennium, not at the end of the Tribulation. In the context of Daniel 12:2, the emphasis is on the hope of the Jews who will die in the Tribulation. The destiny of the wicked is brought in simply to clarify that they too will be raised, not to specify when.

---

<sup>1</sup>Goldingay, p. 307.

<sup>2</sup>Feinberg, p. 181.

<sup>3</sup>See Gerstner, pp. 27, 186.

<sup>4</sup>E.g., Leupold, p. 529.

This is the first mention in the Old Testament of a twofold resurrection. For this reason, and because this verse identifies the time of the physical resurrection of saved Jews (who live outside the Church Age, cf. 1 Thess. 4:13-16), this is an extremely important verse.

"Those who argue simply on the basis of the concept of 'lifetime' or 'age' for only an age-long punishment in hell rather than one of endless duration must reckon with the many passages in the OT that apply *'olam* [everlasting] to the endless life and sovereignty of God himself. In other words, if hell is not eternal, neither is God; for the same Hebrew and Greek words are used for both in the Bible (cf. Rev 4:10; 20:10; 21:8). The corresponding Greek word *aion* exactly parallels the Hebrew *'olam* in connotation and semantic development."<sup>1</sup>

This is the first occurrence of the expression "eternal life" in the Old Testament.<sup>2</sup>

12:3 The emphasis on hope for the Jews living during this time continues in this verse. Rewards will follow resurrection. Those Jews who have insight into the importance of remaining faithful to God, and who do so, will receive glory (cf. 11:33, 35). Those who lead others to do right will also receive glory. Their glory will be similar to the glory of the sky above and to the stars (cf. Matt. 13:43). The angel expressed this blessing in a beautiful parallelism. Their glory will involve the privilege of reigning with Jesus Christ during His millennial kingdom, and from then on—forever, in the eternal state (cf. Matt. 25:14-30; Luke 19:11-27; Rev. 20:4).

"Verses 2-3, then, clearly affirm the doctrines of resurrection and of eternity beyond the grave.

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 152.

<sup>2</sup>Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 256.

Even the most skeptical OT scholars concede the presence of these doctrines here ..."<sup>1</sup>

Other Old Testament verses that teach these doctrines include Job 19:26; Psalms 16:11; 17:15; 73:23 and 24; and Isaiah 25:8 and 26:19.

### The end of the vision 12:4

In conclusion, the angel instructed Daniel to close the record of this revelation. In the ancient Near East people wrote official documents and then, after making a copy for reference, deposited the original in a safe place. The phrase "keep these word secret" does not mean that Daniel should keep them to himself, but that he should preserve this revelation because it was important (cf. 8:26).

Also, it was customary for the scribe who wrote important documents, such as contractual promises, to run his cylinder-seal across the bottom to guarantee authenticity.<sup>2</sup> That is what the angel instructed Daniel to do with this contractual promise. By sealing it Daniel would certify that what stood written was exactly what God had revealed to him and had promised would happen (cf. Rev. 22:18-19).

Daniel was to preserve this revelation (i.e., the Book of Daniel<sup>3</sup>) until "the end of time" (or the time of the end, the last half of the Tribulation<sup>4</sup>) because much of what God had revealed to him concerned the far distant future. Daniel confessed that he did not understand much of it (v. 8), as we can appreciate, since most of it predicted things still future from his standpoint in history.

The last part of this verse probably refers to the attempts of people in the future to understand this revelation, in view of the context (cf. Amos 8:12).<sup>5</sup> In their attempts to understand these prophecies people would search around and try to discover what they meant (cf. Matt. 24:15). As

---

<sup>1</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 153. E.g., Collins, pp. 391-92, 394.

<sup>2</sup>Archer, "Daniel," pp. 153-54.

<sup>3</sup>Keil, p. 485.

<sup>4</sup>*The New Scofield ...*, p. 918.

<sup>5</sup>Calvin, 2:379; Leupold, p. 534.

time passed and knowledge increased they would understand these things better than Daniel could.

"Whether or not physical wandering and travel is involved, the implication is that attempts to understand the truth will require considerable effort."<sup>1</sup>

Even though Daniel and his people did not understand this book's prophecies as well as we do, simply because we have seen many of them fulfilled, these predictions did comfort them. They reassured them that Yahweh would ultimately deliver Israel from the hostile Gentiles and thus fulfill His covenant promises to them.

#### **4. The end of Israel's trials 12:5-13**

Daniel continued to view things in the vision that he began describing in 10:5. The book ends with a question and answer session (cf. 1 Pet. 1:10-11).

##### **The first question 12:5-6**

Daniel now saw two other individuals, undoubtedly angels, in addition to the one who had been addressing him since 10:11, standing on either side of the Tigris River (cf. 10:4). One of these angels asked a question of the man dressed in linen (the Son of Man, cf. 10:5-6) who was above the river. He wanted to know how long it would be until the end of the events just related (cf. 1 Pet. 1:10-12), namely, the things having to do with Israel's final persecution and deliverance (11:36—12:3).

##### **The first answer 12:7**

The "man" above the river swore by the eternal God that what he was about to say was true. Normally people who swore by God lifted one hand to heaven (cf. Deut. 32:40). This Person lifted both hands, thus stressing the truthfulness of what He was about to reveal.

"There must be a reason for the choice of the word translated *stream*. As already indicated, it is the common designation for the Nile river. Possibly, it is deliberately employed here to remind Dan. that just as the Lord had once stood over Egypt,

---

<sup>1</sup>Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 292. Cf. Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 258.

the world-nation which was hostile to God's people, so now does He stand over the world kingdom, represented symbolically by the Nile stream, actually the Tigris, ready again to deliver His people."<sup>1</sup>

The meaning of "time, times, and half a time" is quite clearly three and one-half years (cf. 7:25).<sup>2</sup>

"The word for 'times' may originally have been intended as a dual (*mo'adayim*, 'two years')."<sup>3</sup>

"Smashing" the power of "the holy people" refers to the terrible persecution of the Jews in the end times previously revealed (11:36-45). Even though the future enemy of the Jews would be in control for one week (seven years, 9:27), intense persecution would only be the Jews' lot for the last half of that period (cf. Zech. 14:2-3). This was good news for Daniel and his people.

### The second question 12:8

Daniel continued having trouble comprehending this revelation, so he respectfully asked the messenger how everything would end. He may have been particularly interested in receiving more information about the resurrection and rewards that had been mentioned briefly before (vv. 1-3).

### The second answer 12:9-13

12:9        The Lord reminded Daniel that much of what he had received would remain obscure until the end time (cf. v. 4). Then people will be able to look back, marvel at the total fulfillment of prophecy, and glorify the sovereign Most High God.

"God in His infinite wisdom has revealed to us only that which it is needful for us to have in order that we may know what He requires of us. He does not reveal that which does not directly contribute toward this end. Scripture is not a body of esoteric mystery given to satisfy idle curiosity. It

---

<sup>1</sup>Ibid., p. 259.

<sup>2</sup>Montgomery, p. 475; et al.

<sup>3</sup>Archer, "Daniel," p. 155.



is given that we 'might not sin against Thee' (Ps. 119:11b). It is a thoroughly practical Book."<sup>1</sup>

- 12:10 The troubles coming on the earth, and especially on the Jews, will cause many people to turn to God and experience spiritual purification through faith (in Christ). "The wicked," however, will continue to "act wickedly," and will not understand what is happening (cf. 1 Cor. 2:14; Rev. 13:10). The wise, "who have insight" because they pay attention to divine revelation, will understand what is happening.

In the Old Testament, and in Scripture generally, a wise person is one who lives in the light of divine revelation, and a fool is one who ignores it. This verse provides motivation to pay attention to what God has revealed and to study it carefully. It should also help us to avoid thinking, naively, that the passing of time and the fulfillment of prophecy will cause bad people to change their ways. Humankind will not get better and better, in spite of what postmillennialists and social evolutionists believe (2 Tim. 3:13).

- 12:11 Now the divine messenger conceded to Daniel's request and provided a little more information. However, as these things were unclear to Daniel, many of them still are unclear for most interpreters today, including myself.

The LORD revealed that from the time that Antichrist will terminate Jewish sacrifices and desecrate the temple (in the middle of the Tribulation; cf. Matt. 24:15) there will be 1,290 days. This is 30 days longer than the three and one-half years previously mentioned (v. 7; cf. 7:25; Rev. 11:2; 12:6, 14; 13:5). Consequently, the extra month must involve time before the three and one-half years, after it, or both.

Perhaps Antichrist will terminate the sacrifices and desecrate the temple 30 days before the middle of the seventieth week. This interpretation views the explanation in this verse as more specific and the one in 9:27 as a general description.<sup>2</sup> A similar

---

<sup>1</sup>Young, *The Prophecy* ..., pp. 260-61. Cf. 2 Tim. 3:16-17.

<sup>2</sup>Cf. Archer, "Daniel," p. 156.

view is that the Antichrist may announce the termination of sacrifices and the setting up of the abomination 30 days before he carries out those acts.<sup>1</sup>

Another possibility is that there will be a 30-day period between the time when Antichrist abolishes the regular sacrifice and the time when he sets up the abomination of desolation. A fourth possibility is that the 30 days will extend beyond the last three and one-half years.<sup>2</sup> It will include the cleansing of the temple and possibly the judgments of Israel and the nations that Christ will execute when He returns to the earth (Ezek. 20:34-38; Matt. 25:31-46).

Some interpreters believe that this three and one-half-year period began when Antiochus Epiphanes terminated the daily sacrifice in Jerusalem, and it ended when this sacrifice was restored.<sup>3</sup> But the context seems to require a yet future fulfillment.

One writer who took numbers like this in the book to be only symbolical interpreted these days as "a season of affliction that is scarcely more than half a season of divine affliction and, we conclude, therefore quite bearable—not surpassing man's strength to endure."<sup>4</sup> Another scholar believed that they were "variant calculation[s]" or that the writer "revises (presumably more precise) calculation[s]" made after the fact.<sup>5</sup>

12:12      The LORD said that those people will be blessed who keep waiting, presumably for God to rescue them (v. 1), and attain to the 1,335 days. Why did He mention this particular number of days, and when will this period end?

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1374.

<sup>2</sup>D[arby], *Studies in ...*, p. 86; Gaebelin, *The Annotated ...*, 2:3:40; Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, p. 295; Showers, pp. 57-58; Feinberg, pp. 186-87; Whitcomb, p. 168; Campbell, p. 142; Ironside, pp. 235-36; Dyer, in *The Old ...*, p. 720; Culver, "Daniel," p. 799; Fruchtenbaum, *The ... Daniel*, p. 523.

<sup>3</sup>E.g., Henry, p. 1104.

<sup>4</sup>Leupold, p. 547.

<sup>5</sup>Collins, pp. 400, 401.

The 1,335-day period is 45 days (one and a half months) longer than the 1,290-day period just mentioned (v. 11). Evidently this period will end after the Tribulation has ended, and before the millennial reign of Christ has begun, or at least after He has returned to the earth.

We can only speculate about what these 45 days following the Tribulation will hold for people living on the earth then. One view is that Jesus Christ will appear in the clouds at the end of the Tribulation (Matt. 24:30), and 45 days later He will descend to the earth.<sup>1</sup> A better theory, I think, is that it may take 45 days for Jesus Christ to accomplish the necessary judgments and set up His kingdom after returning to the earth.<sup>2</sup>

Some interpreters favor the view that these 30-day and 45-day periods reflect the use of different calendars from the one that earlier prescribed the length of the three and one-half years as a period of 1,260 days.<sup>3</sup> Keil and Young took the numbers symbolically depicting a limited period of trouble.<sup>4</sup> Whatever the explanation, clearly this verse will encourage believers living during the Tribulation to remain faithful to the Lord Jesus. It encourages us likewise.

12:13      The Lord then dismissed the aged prophet. He was to go his way to "the end." The end may refer to the end of Daniel's life. Or it may refer to the "the end of the age [lit. days]."

The first option seems preferable to me, since the LORD appears to have been viewing Daniel's life in sequence. First, Daniel would "rest," in death, then he would "rise" (cf. v. 2), and finally he would receive his reward ("allotted portion")

---

<sup>1</sup>Pentecost, "Daniel," p. 1374.

<sup>2</sup>D[arby], *Studies in ...*, pp. 86, 131; Dennett, p. 205; Archer, "Daniel," p. 156; Walvoord, *Daniel ...*, pp. 295-96; Showers, p. 58; Feinberg, p. 187; Whitcomb, p. 168; Campbell, p. 143; Wood, *A Commentary ...*, pp. 328-29; Culver, "Daniel," p. 799. Fruchtenbaum, *The ... Daniel*, pp. 522-23, listed nine things that will happen during this time on pp. 522-523, and he visualized them with a chart on p. 525.

<sup>3</sup>Goldingay, pp. 309-10.

<sup>4</sup>Keil, p. 502; Young, *The Prophecy ...*, p. 263. See Tanner, pp. 763-66, for discussion of three views.

from God (cf. v. 3). In other words, there are two different "ends" described in this verse: the first "end" being the end of Daniel's earthly life, and the second "end" being "the end of the age," when Old Testament believers are resurrected. Daniel's resurrection and recognition would occur at the end of the age, namely, at the end of the times of the Gentiles, which will end with the second advent of Christ.

Thus this great book closes with a reminder that the present age of Gentile domination is not all that God has in store for humankind. There is another age coming, beyond the present one, in which Jesus Christ will reign in righteousness and holiness on the earth (cf. Isa. 11:9; Zech. 9:10). Christians should look forward to it and pray for its coming (Matt. 6:10; Luke 11:2).

Whereas this book would have encouraged the Jews of Daniel's day, it has become increasingly encouraging to God's people as history has unfolded. Today we can see, as never before, how God has fulfilled many of His predictions exactly in the past. This gives us great confidence as we anticipate His faithfulness to those promises that still remain unfulfilled.

What other practical effects should an understanding of Daniel's prophecies have on Christians today? We can understand how God will create history; we can know the "times and seasons" that are still future. This knowledge should make us feel the urgency of our commission (Matt. 28:19-20); it should spur us on to evangelism and discipleship. It should also give us a sense of peace as we go through trouble and believe that God will win the battle over evil. It should encourage us to inform God's people of what He has revealed so that they can be informed and ready for what is coming. And it should cause us to live holy lives in view of the Lord Jesus Christ's return.

## Appendix

### Aspects of the Person and Work of God that the Old Testament Prophetic Books Stress

Isaiah	The <i>holiness</i> of God
Jeremiah	The <i>judgment</i> of God
Lamentations	The <i>sorrow</i> of God
Ezekiel	The <i>glory</i> of God
Daniel	The <i>sovereignty</i> of God
Hosea	The <i>love</i> of God
Joel	The <i>severity</i> of God
Amos	The <i>righteousness</i> of God
Obadiah	The <i>justice</i> of God
Jonah	The <i>compassion</i> of God
Micah	The <i>leadership</i> of God
Nahum	The <i>wrath</i> of God
Habakkuk	The <i>trustworthiness</i> of God
Zephaniah	The <i>day</i> of God
Haggai	The <i>zeal</i> of God
Zechariah	The <i>power</i> of God
Malachi	The <i>patience</i> of God

## Bibliography

Aalders, G. C. *Daniel*. Koorte Verklaring servies. The Netherlands: Kampen, 1965.

Albrektson, Bertil. *History and the Gods*. Lund, Sweden: CWK Gleerup, 1967.

Albright, William F. *From Stone Age to Christianity*. 2nd ed. New York: Doubleday Press, Anchor Books, 1957.

Alexander, J. B. "New Light on the Fiery Furnace." *Journal of Biblical Literature* 69:4 (December 1950):375-76.

Alexander, Ralph H. "Hermeneutics of Old Testament Apocalyptic Literature." Th.D. dissertation, Dallas Theological Seminary, 1968.

Anderson, Steven D., and Rodger C. Young. "The Remembrance of Daniel's Darius the Mede in Berossus and Harpocraton." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 173:691 (July-September 2016):315-23.

Anderson, Robert. *The Coming Prince*. 19th ed. Grand Rapids: Kregel Publications, 1975.

Archer, Gleason L., Jr. "Daniel." In *Daniel-Minor Prophets*. Vol. 7 of *The Expositor's Bible Commentary*. 12 vols. Edited by Frank E. Gaebelin and Richard P. Polcyn. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1985.

\_\_\_\_\_. "Old Testament History and Recent Archeology From the Exile to Malachi." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 127:508 (October-December 1970):291-98.

\_\_\_\_\_. *A Survey of Old Testament Introduction*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1964. Revised ed. 1974.

Armerding, Carl. "Russia and the King of the North." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 120:477 (January-March 1963):50-55.

Baldwin, Joyce G. *Daniel, An Introduction and Commentary*. Tyndale Old Testament Commentaries series. Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 1978.

- Barker, Kenneth L. "Evidence from Daniel." In *A Case for Premillennialism: A New Consensus*, pp. 135-46. Edited by Donald K. Campbell and Jeffrey L. Townsend. Chicago: Moody Press, 1992.
- Baukal, Charles E., Jr. "The Fiery Furnace." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 171:682 (April-June 2014):148-71.
- Baxter, J. Sidlow. *Explore the Book*. 1960. One vol. ed. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1980.
- Beitzel, Barry J. *The Moody Atlas of Bible Lands*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1985.
- Bevan, Anthony Ashley. *A Short Commentary on the Book of Daniel*. Cambridge: University Press, 1892.
- Blaiklock, E. M. *Today's Handbook of Bible Characters*. Minneapolis: Bethany House Publishers, 1979.
- Blaising, Craig A. "The Day of the Lord and the Seventieth Week of Daniel." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 169:674 (April-June 2012):131-42.
- Boutflower, Charles. *In and Around the Book of Daniel*. Reprint ed. Grand Rapids: Kregel Publishing Co., 1977.
- Bramer, Stephen J. "Suffering in the Writing Prophets (Isaiah to Malachi)." In *Why, O God? Suffering and Disability in the Bible and the Church*, pp. 147-59. Edited by Larry J. Waters and Roy B. Zuck. Wheaton: Crossway, 2011.
- Breshears, Gerry. "The Body of Christ: Prophet, Priest, or King?" *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 37:1 (March 1994):3-26.
- Bright, John. *A History of Israel*. Philadelphia: Westminster Press, 1959.
- Bruce, Les P. "Discourse Theme and the Narratives of Daniel." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 160:638 (April-June 2003):
- Bury, J. B.; S. A. Cook; and F. E. Adcock, eds. *The Cambridge Ancient History*. 12 vols. 2nd ed. reprinted. Cambridge, Eng.: University Press, 1928.

Cairns, Earle E. *Christianity Through the Centuries: A History of the Christian Church*. 3<sup>rd</sup> ed. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1958.

Calvin, John. *Commentaries on the Book of the Prophet Daniel*. 2 vols. Translated by Thomas Myers. Edinburgh: Calvin Translation Society, 1852.

Campbell, Donald K. *Daniel: Decoder of Dreams*. Wheaton: Scripture Press Publications, Victor Books, 1977.

Charles, Robert Henry. *The Book of Daniel*. The New Century Bible series. New York: H. Frowde, Oxford University, n.d.

Chisholm, Robert B., Jr. *Handbook on the Prophets*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 2002.

Collins, John J. *Daniel*. Hermeneia series. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1993.

Cook, J. M. *The Persian Empire*. London: Dent, 1983.

Culver, Robert D. "Daniel." In *The Wycliffe Bible Commentary*, pp. 769-800. Edited by Charles F. Pfeiffer and Everett F. Harrison. Chicago: Moody Press, 1962.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Daniel and the Latter Days*. Chicago: Moody Press, n.d.

Cumont, F. "La Plus Ancienne geographie astrologique." *Klio* 9 (1909):263-73.

D[arby], J[ohn] N[elson]. *Studies on the Book of Daniel*. London: G. Morrish, n.d.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Synopsis of the Books of the Bible*. Revised ed. 5 vols. New York: Loizeaux Brothers Publishers, 1942.

Day, John. *Yahweh and the Gods and Goddesses of Canaan*. Sheffield, Eng.: Sheffield Academic Press, 2000.

Dennett, Edward. *Daniel the Prophet: and the Times of the Gentiles* Reprint ed. Oak Park, Ill.: Bible Truth Publishers, 1967.



Driver, Samuel Rolles. *The Book of Daniel*. The Cambridge Bible for Schools and Colleges series. Cambridge, Eng.: Cambridge University Press, 1900.

Durant, Will and Ariel. *The Lessons of History*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1968.

Dyer, Charles H. "The Musical Instruments in Daniel 3." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 147:588 (October-December 1990):426-36.

\_\_\_\_\_. *World News and Bible Prophecy*. Wheaton, Ill.: Tyndale House Publishers, 1993.

Dyer, Charles H., and Eugene H. Merrill. *The Old Testament Explorer*. Nashville: Word Publishing, 2001. Reissued as *Nelson's Old Testament Survey*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 2001.

Eichrodt, Walther. *Theology of the Old Testament*. 5<sup>th</sup> ed. revised. 2 vols. Translated by John A. Baker. The Old Testament Library series. Philadelphia: Westminster Press, 1961 and 1967.

Feinberg, Charles Lee. *Daniel: The Kingdom of the Lord*. Winona Lake, Ind.: BMH Books, 1981.

Ferguson, Paul. "Nebuchadnezzar, Gilgamesh, and the 'Babylonian Job.'" *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 37:3 (September 1994):321-31.

Finegan, Jack. *Handbook of Biblical Chronology*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1964.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Light From the Ancient Past: The Archeological Background of Judaism and Christianity*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Princeton: Princeton University Press; and London: Oxford University Press, 1959.

Finley, Thomas J. "The Book of Daniel in the Canon of Scripture." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 165:658 (April-June 2008):195-208.

Ford, Desmond. *Daniel*. Nashville: Southern Publishing House, 1978.

Free, Joseph P. *Archaeology and Bible History*. 6th ed. Wheaton: Scripture Press, 1950, 1959.

Fruchtenbaum, Arnold G. *The Book of Daniel*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Ariel's Bible Commentary series. San Antonio: Ariel Ministries, 2023.

\_\_\_\_\_. *The Book of Isaiah*. Ariel's Bible Commentary series. San Antonio: Ariel Ministries, 2021.

Gaebelein, Arno C. *The Annotated Bible*. 4 vols. Reprint ed. Chicago: Moody Press, and New York: Loizeaux Brothers, 1970.

\_\_\_\_\_. *The Prophet Daniel*. New York: Our Hope Publishers, 1911.

Garrison, Jason A. "Nebuchadnezzar's Dream: An Inversion of Gilgamesh Imagery." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 169:674 (April-June 2012):172-87.

Gerstner, John H. *The Theology of the Major Sects*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1960.

Goldingay, John E. *Daniel*. Word Biblical Commentaries series. Dallas: Word Books, 1989.

Gooding, David W. "The Literary Structure of the Book of Daniel and Its Implications." *Tyndale Bulletin* 32 (1981):43-79.

Goswell, Greg. "The Temple Theme in the Book of Daniel." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 55:3 (September 2012):509-20.

Gurney, R. "the Four Kingdoms of Daniel 2 and 7." *Themelios* 2 (1977):39-45.

Hanna, Kenneth G. *From Moses to Malachi: Exploring the Old Testament*. 2nd ed. Edited by Roy B. Zuck. Bloomington, Ind.: CrossBooks, 2014.

Harrison, R. K. *Introduction to the Old Testament*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1969.

Henry, Matthew. *Commentary on the Whole Bible*. One volume ed. Edited by Leslie F. Church. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing Co., 1961.

Herodotus. *The Histories*. The Landmark Herodotus edition. Edited by Robert B. Strassler. Translated by Andrea L. Purvis. Pantheon Books, Random House: New York and Toronto, 2007.

Hiebert, D. Edmond. *Working with God: Scriptural Studies in Intercession*. New York: Carlton Press, 1987.

Hislop, Alexander. *The Two Babylons*. New York: Loizeaux Brothers, 1950.

Hitchcock, Mark L. "A Defense of the Domitianic Date of the Book of Revelation." Ph.D. dissertation, Dallas Theological Seminary, 2005.

Hoehner, Harold W. "Daniel's Seventy Weeks and New Testament Chronology." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 132:525 (January-March 1975):47-65.

*The Holy Bible: Authorized King James Version*. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press, n.d.

*The Holy Bible: Contemporary English Version*. New York: American Bible Society, 1995.

*The Holy Bible: English Standard Version*. Wheaton: Good News Publishers, 2001.

*The Holy Bible: Holman Christian Standard Bible*. Nashville: Holman Bible Publishers, 2004.

*The Holy Bible: New International Version*. Colorado Springs, et al.: International Bible Society, 1984.

*The Holy Bible: New King James Version*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 1982.

*The Holy Bible: New Revised Standard Version*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 1989.

*The Holy Bible: Revised Standard Version*. New York: Thomas Nelson & Sons, 1952.

*The Holy Bible: Today's New International Version*. Colorado Springs: Zondervan/International Bible Society, 2005.

Humphreys, W. L. "A Life-style for Diaspora." *Journal of Biblical Literature* 92 (1973):211-23.

Ironside, Harry A. *The Four Hundred Silent Years*. New York: Loizeaux Brothers, n.d.

\_\_\_\_\_. *The Great Parenthesis*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1943.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Lectures on Daniel the Prophet*. New York: Loizeaux Brothers, 1946.

Jacob, Edmond. *Theology of the Old Testament*. Translated by Arthur W. Heathcote and Philip J. Allcock. New York and Evanston, Ill.: Harper & Row, 1958.

Jamieson, Robert; A. R. Fausset; and David Brown. *Commentary Practical and Explanatory on the Whole Bible*. Revised ed. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1961.

Jeffery, Arthur. "The Book of Daniel, Introduction and Exegesis." In *The Interpreter's Bible*. 6 vols. Edited by George A. Buttrick. New York: Abingdon-Cokesbury, 1951.

Jerome. *Commentary on Daniel*. Translated by Gleason L. Archer Jr. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1958.

Josephus, Flavius. *The Works of Flavius Josephus*. Translated by William Whiston. London: T. Nelson and Sons, 1866; reprint ed. Peabody, Mass.: Hendrickson Publishers, 1988.

Kaiser, Walter C., Jr. *Toward an Old Testament Theology*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1978.

Kaminsky, Joel S. *Corporate Responsibility in the Hebrew Bible*. Sheffield, Eng.: Sheffield Academic Press, 1995.

Keil, Carl Friedrich. *Biblical Commentary on the Book of Daniel*. Translated by M. G. Easton. Biblical Commentary on the Old Testament. N.p.; reprint ed., Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., n.d.

Kelly, William. *Lectures on the Book of Daniel*. 2nd ed. London: G. Morrish, 1881.

King, Geoffrey R. *Daniel*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1966.

- Kitchen, Kenneth A. "The Aramaic in Daniel." In *Notes on Some Problems in the Book of Daniel*, pp. 31-79. London: Tyndale Press, 1965.
- Kraeling, Emil G. *Rand McNally Bible Atlas*. New York, Chicago, and San Francisco: Rand McNally & Co., 1956.
- Lange, John Peter, ed. *A Commentary on the Holy Scriptures*. 25 vols. New York: Charles Scribner, 1865-80. Reprint ed. 12 vols. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, n.d. Vol. 7: *Ezekiel, Daniel, and the Minor Prophets*, by W. J. Schröder, et al.
- Larkin, Clarence. *The Book of Daniel*. Philadelphia: The author, 1929.
- Larson, David. "Approximate Fulfillment as the Key to Reconsidering the Decree of Cyrus as the Beginning Point of Daniel's 70 Weeks." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 65:3 (September 2022):491-507.
- Latourette, Kenneth Scott. *A History of Christianity*. New York: Harper & Brothers Publishers, 1953.
- Lehmann, Paul. *The Transfiguration of Politics*. London: SCM Press, 1975.
- Lenglet, A. "La structure littéraire de Daniel 2—7." *Biblica* 53 (1972):169-90.
- Leupold, Herbert Carl. *Exposition of Daniel*. Minneapolis: Augsburg Press, 1949; reprint ed., Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1969.
- Lightner, Robert P. *Angels, Satan, and Demons*. Swindoll Leadership Library series. Nashville: Word Publishing, 1998.
- Longman, Tremper, III and Raymond B. Dillard. *An Introduction to the Old Testament*. 2<sup>nd</sup> ed. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2006.
- Matheny, James F. and Marjorie Matheny. *Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron: Rethinking the Kingdoms of Daniel 2*. Enid, Okla.: Jay & Associates, Publishers, 1988.
- Mauro, Philip. *The Seventy Weeks and the Great Tribulation*. Boston: Scripture Truth Depot, 1923.

McClain, Alva J. *Daniel's Prophecies of the Seventy Weeks*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1940.

\_\_\_\_\_. *The Greatness of the Kingdom, An Inductive Study of the Kingdom of God*. Winona Lake, Ind.: BMH Books, 1959; Chicago: Moody Press, 1968.

McGee, J. Vernon. *Thru the Bible with J. Vernon McGee*. 5 vols. Pasadena, Calif.: Thru The Bible Radio; and Nashville: Thomas Nelson, Inc., 1983.

Merrill, Eugene H. "Daniel as a Contribution to Kingdom Theology." In *Essays in Honor of J. Dwight Pentecost*, pp. 211-25. Edited by Stanley D. Toussaint and Charles H. Dyer. Chicago: Moody Press, 1986.

\_\_\_\_\_. "A Theology of Ezekiel and Daniel." In *A Biblical Theology of the Old Testament*, pp. 365-95. Edited by Roy B. Zuck. Chicago: Moody Press, 1991.

Mitchell, T. C., and R. Joyce. "The Musical Instruments in Nebuchadnezzar's Orchestra." In *Notes on Some Problems in the Book of Daniel*, pp. 19-27. London: Tyndale Press, 1965.

Montgomery, James A. *A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on the Book of Daniel*. International Critical Commentary series. Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1964.

Morgan, G. Campbell. *An Exposition of the Whole Bible*. Westwood, N.J.: Fleming H. Revell Co., 1959.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Living Messages of the Books of the Bible*. 2 vols. New York: Fleming H. Revell Co., 1912.

\_\_\_\_\_. *The Unfolding Message of the Bible*. Westwood, N.J.: Fleming H. Revell Co., 1961.

*The Nelson Study Bible*. Edited by Earl D. Radmacher. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 1997.

*The NET2 (New English Translation) Bible*. N.c.: Biblical Press Foundation, 2019.

*The New American Standard Bible*. La Habra, Cal.: The Lockman Foundation, 2020.

*The New Bible Dictionary*. Edited by J. D. Douglas. 1962 ed. S.v. "Belshazzar," by D. J. Wiseman, p. 139.

\_\_\_\_\_. S.v. "Calendar (in the OT)," by D. J. Wiseman, pp. 176-79.

\_\_\_\_\_. S.v. "Eunuch," by R. J. A. Sheriffs, pp. 398-99.

\_\_\_\_\_. S.v. "Ophir," by D. J. Wiseman, p. 911.

\_\_\_\_\_. S.v. "Uphaz," by D. J. Wiseman, p. 1304.

*The New English Bible with the Apocrypha*. N.c.: Oxford University Press and Cambridge University Press. 1970.

*The New Scofield Reference Bible*. Edited by Frank E. Gaebelein, et al. New York: Oxford University Press, 1967.

Olmstead, A. T. *History of the Persian Empire*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1948.

Oppenheim, A. L. "The Interpretation of Dreams in the Ancient Near East." *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society* 46 (1956):179-373.

Patterson, Richard D. "Holding on to Daniel's Court Tales." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 36:4 (December 1993):445-54.

Pache, René. *The Return of Jesus Christ*. Translated by William Sanford LaSor. Chicago: Moody Press, 1955.

Payne, J. Barton. *The Theology of the Older Testament*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1962.

Pember, George Hawkins. *The Great Prophecies of the Centuries Concerning Israel and the Gentiles*. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1895.

Pentecost, J. Dwight. "Daniel." In *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: Old Testament*, pp. 1323-75. Edited by John F. Walvoord and Roy B. Zuck. Wheaton: Scripture Press Publications, Victor Books, 1985.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Prophecy for Today*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1961.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Things to Come*. Findlay, Ohio: Dunham Publishing Co., 1958, 1963.

Peretti, Frank E. *Piercing the Darkness*. Westchester, Ill.: Crossway Books, 1989.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Prophet*. Wheaton: Crossway Books, 1992.

\_\_\_\_\_. *This Present Darkness*. Westchester, Ill.: Crossway Books, 1986.

Pfeiffer, Robert H. *History of New Testament Times With an Introduction to the Apocrypha*. London: Adam and Charles Black, 1949, 1963.

Philpot, Joshua M. "Was Joseph a Type of Daniel? Typological Correspondence in Genesis 37—50 and Daniel 1—6." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 61:4 (December 2018):681-96.

Porteous, Norman W. *Daniel: A Commentary*. Philadelphia: Westminster Press, 1965.

Price, J. Randall. "Old Testament Tribulation Terms." In *When the Trumpet Sounds*, pp. 57-83. Edited by Thomas Ice and Timothy Demy. Eugene, Oreg.: Harvest House Publishers, 1995.

\_\_\_\_\_. "Prophetic Postponement in Daniel 9 and Other Texts." In *Issues in Dispensationalism*, pp. 133-65. Edited by Wesley R. Willis and John R. Master. Chicago: Moody Press, 1994.

Pritchard, James B., ed. *Ancient Near Eastern Texts*. Revised ed. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1969.

Pusey, Edward B. *Daniel the Prophet*. New York: Funk & Wagnalls, 1885.

Rasmussen, Carl G. *Zondervan Atlas of the Bible*. Revised ed. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2010.

Ray, Charles E. "Daniel 9:24-27 Considered, Part I," and "Daniel 9:24-27 Considered, Part II." In *Dispensationalism Tomorrow & Beyond*, pp. 293-320 and 323-41. Edited by Christopher Cone. Ft. Worth: Tyndale Seminary Press, 2008.

Rosenthal, Franz. *A Grammar of Biblical Aramaic*. Wiesbaden, Germany: O. Harrassowitz, 1961.

Rowley, Harold Henry. *Darius the Mede and the Four World Empires in the Book of Daniel*. Cardiff, Wales: University of Wales, 1959.



- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Historicity of the Fifth Chapter of Daniel." *Journal of Theological Studies* 32 (October 1930):12-31.
- Ryrie, Charles Caldwell. *Biblical Answers to Tough Questions*. Previously published as *Biblical Answers to Contemporary Issues*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1974, 1991. Ft. Worth: Tyndale Seminary Press, 2008.
- \_\_\_\_\_. *Dispensationalism*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1995.
- Schwantes, Siegfried J. *A Short History of the Ancient Near East*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1965.
- Seiss, Joseph A. *Voices from Babylon: Or the Records of Daniel the Prophet*. Philadelphia: Porter & Coates, 1879.
- Shea, William H. "Darius the Mede: An Update." *Andrews University Seminary Studies* 20 (Autumn 1982):229-47.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "The Search for Darius the Mede (Concluded), or, The Time of the Answer to Daniel's Prayer and the Date of the Death of Darius the Mede." *Journal of the Adventist Theological Society* 12:1 (Spring 2001):97-105.
- \_\_\_\_\_. "Supplementary Evidence in Support of 457 B.C. as the Starting Date for the 2300 Day-Years of Daniel 8:14." *Journal of the Adventist Theological Society* 12:1 (Spring 2001):89-96.
- Showers, Renald E. *Maranatha Our Lord, Come: A Definitive Study of the Rapture of the Church*. Bellmawr, Pa.: Friends of Israel Gospel Ministry, 1995.
- Slotki, Judah J. *Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah: Hebrew Text & English Translation with Introductions and Commentary*. London: The Soncino Press, 1966.
- Smith, Charles R. "The Book of Life." *Grace Theological Journal* 6:2 (Fall 1985):219-30.
- Steinmann, Andrew E. "Is the Antichrist in Daniel 11?" *Bibliotheca Sacra* 162:646 (April-June 2005):195-209.
- Stuart, Moses. *A Commentary on the Book of Daniel*. Boston: Crocker & Brewster, 1850.

Swindoll, Charles R. *The Swindoll Study Bible*. Carol Stream, Ill.: Tyndale House Publishers, 2017.

Talbot, Louis T. *The Prophecies of Daniel*. 3rd ed. Wheaton: Van Kampen Press, 1954.

Tanner, J. Paul. *Daniel*. Evangelical Exegetical Commentary series. Bellingham, Wash.: Lexham Academic, Logos Bible Software, 2020.

\_\_\_\_\_. "Is Daniel's Seventy-Weeks Prophecy Messianic?" *Bibliotheca Sacra* 166:662 (April-June 2009):181-200; 166:663 (July-September 2009):319-35.

\_\_\_\_\_. "The Literary Structure of the Book of Daniel." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 160:639 (July-September 2003):269-82.

Thiele, Edwin R. *The Mysterious Numbers of the Hebrew Kings*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1951.

Thomas, D. W., ed. *Documents from Old Testament Times*. London/New York: Thomas Nelson, 1958.

Thomas, W. H. Griffith. "The Purpose of the Fourth Gospel." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 125:499 (July-September 1968):254-62.

Thrasher, Bill. *A Journey to Victorious Praying*. Chicago: Moody Publishers, 2003.

Tomasino, Anthony J. *Judaism Before Jesus: The Events & Ideas That Shaped the New Testament World*. Downers Grove, Ill. and Leicester, Eng.: InterVarsity Press, 2003.

Tregelles, Samuel Prideaux. *Remarks on the Prophetic Visions in the Book of Daniel*. 7th ed. London: Sovereign Grace, 1965.

*Unger's Bible Dictionary*. Edited by Merrill F. Unger. 1957 ed. S.v. "Shushan," by Merrill F. Unger, pp. 1022-23.

Unger, Merrill F. *Demons in the World Today: A Study of Occultism in the Light of God's Word*. Wheaton, Ill.: Tyndale House Publishers, 1971.

Van Baalen, Jan Karel. *The Chaos of Cults: A Study in Present-Day Isms*. 2<sup>nd</sup> revised and enlarged ed. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1938, 1956.

Van Sickle, C. E. *A Political and Cultural History of the Ancient World*. 2 vols. N.c.: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1947 & 1948.

von Rad, Gerhard. *Old Testament Theology*. 2 vols. Translated by D. M. G. Stalker. New York and Evanston, Ill.: Harper & Row, 1962 and 1965.

Waltke, Bruce K. "The Date of the Book of Daniel." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 133:532 (October-December 1976):319-29.

\_\_\_\_\_. *An Old Testament Theology*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 2007.

Walton, John H. "The Four Kingdoms of Daniel." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 29:1 (March 1986):25-36.

Walvoord, John F. *Daniel: The Key to Prophetic Revelation*. Chicago: Moody Press, 1971.

\_\_\_\_\_. *The Nations in Prophecy*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1967.

\_\_\_\_\_. "Revival of Rome." *Bibliotheca Sacra* 126:504 (October-December 1969):317-28.

Weaver, Paul. "Daniel." In *Surveying the Old Testament Prophetic Books*, pp. 209-49. Learn the Word Bible Survey series. Edited by Paul D. Weaver. N.c.: Learn the Word Publishing, 2021. West, Nathaniel. *Daniel's Great Prophecy*. New York: Hope of Israel, 1898.

Whitcomb, John Clement. *Daniel*. Everyman's Bible Commentary series. Chicago: Moody Press, 1985.

\_\_\_\_\_. *Darius the Mede*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1959.

Wiersbe, Warren W. "Daniel." In *The Bible Exposition Commentary/Prophets*, pp. 251-314. Colorado Springs, Colo.: Cook Communications Ministries; and Eastbourne, England: Kingsway Communications Ltd., 2002.

Wilson, Robert Dick. *Studies in the Book of Daniel*. New York: Putnam, 1917.

\_\_\_\_\_. "The Title 'King of Persia' in the Scriptures." *Princeton Theological Review* 15 (1917):90-145.

Wiseman, Donald J. *The Chronicles of the Chaldean Kings*. London: Trustees of the British Museum, 1956.

\_\_\_\_\_. "Some Historical Problems in the Book of Daniel." In *Notes on Some Problems in the Book of Daniel*, pp. 9-18. Edited by D. J. Wiseman, et al. London: Tyndale Press, 1965.

Wood, Leon J. *A Commentary on Daniel*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1973.

\_\_\_\_\_. *The Prophets of Israel*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1979.

\_\_\_\_\_. *A Survey of Israel's History*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan Publishing House, 1970.

Yamauchi, Edwin M. *Greece and Babylon*. Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, 1967.

Young, Edward J. *The Prophecy of Daniel: A Commentary*. Grand Rapids: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co., 1949.

Young, Rodger C. "The Theological Problem Presented by the Exactness of Daniel's 70 Weeks." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 65:3 (September 2022):473-89.

\_\_\_\_\_. "Xenophon's Cyaxares: Uncle of Cyrus, Friend of Daniel." *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 64:2 (June 2021):265-85.

Yuzon, Lourdino A. "The Kingdom of God in Daniel." *South East Asia Journal of Theology* 19 (1978):23-27.

*Zondervan Pictorial Bible Dictionary*. Edited by Merrill C. Tenney. 1975 ed. 5 vols. S.v. "Daniel, Book of," by R. K. Harrison, 2:12-21.